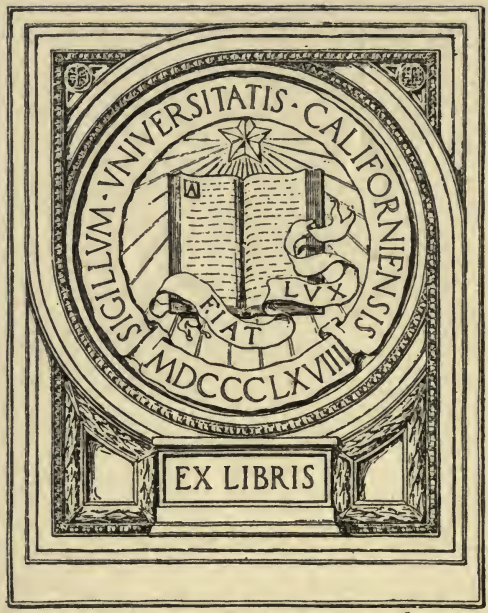
SIGILLVM · VNIVERSITATIS · CALIFORNIENSIS
FIAT
LVX
MDCCCLXVIII
EX LIBRIS

760
T913

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/firstbookinlatin00tuelrich

The Students' Series of Latin Classics

A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN

BY

HIRAM TUELL, A.M.,

PRINCIPAL OF THE MILTON (MASS.) HIGH SCHOOL

AND

HAROLD NORTH FOWLER, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE WESTERN RESERVE UNIVERSITY; FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE PHILLIPS EXETER ACADEMY

UNIV. OF CALIFORNIA

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

LEACH, SHEWELL, & SANBORN

BOSTON. NEW YORK. CHICAGO

760
T913

Copyright, 1893,
By HIRAM TUELL and HAROLD NORTH FOWLER.

73673

Norwood Press:
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith
Boston, Mass., U.S.A.

OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA
PA2087
T92
1893
MAIN

PREFACE.

THE vocabulary of this book contains about seven hundred words, exclusive of proper names.

Although a few words not found in Cæsar have been used as material for paradigms, illustrations, and sentences on familiar subjects, by far the greater part of the vocabulary has been selected from the first four books of the *Gallic War*. Indeed, nearly every word which Cæsar uses six or more times in these four books will be found here; and they form so large a proportion of the text of Cæsar that a pupil who has mastered the vocabulary of this book will find himself familiar with eighty-five per cent of the words on an average page of the *Gallic War*.

To ensure the acquisition of the vocabulary, every word, when first introduced, is used in at least three consecutive chapters; and the small number of words has compelled their more frequent repetition in later chapters.

The illustrative sentences — which, in all cases, precede the rules of syntax — contain, with few exceptions, only words already found in the exercises.

Each principle of syntax appears in at least three successive chapters, when first introduced, and is afterwards frequently repeated.

The development of the verb is slow, and carefully graded with reference to the difficulty of acquirement.

The exercises on forms are designed to be easy drill-exercises, and contain no new words. They are numerous, and are capable of indefinite expansion at the will of the teacher.

The carefully graded reading lessons, beginning with Chapter XXX., contain the story of the first book of the *Gallic War*, and so prepare the pupil to begin the reading of Cæsar, at the second book, with a proper understanding of the previous narrative; or at the first, with such a knowledge of its contents as to remove many of its difficulties. Few words are used which have not already occurred in the exercises; and whenever new words are introduced, their translation is given in parenthesis.

The illustrations and exercises of Chapter LXI. (on indirect discourse) can be omitted without causing inconvenience in the use of the rest of the book.

The derivation and composition of words are treated more fully than is usual in books for beginners, in the hope that a simple presentation of important parts of these subjects may lighten the pupil's subsequent labors.

It is expected that the book will prove easier than the ordinary first book, on account of its small vocabulary

and careful gradation, and will contribute far more to the rapidity and pleasure of later progress in consequence of the principle which has guided the selection of the words and the more thorough mastery of their meanings.

We desire to acknowledge our indebtedness to Henry Snyder, A.M., Superintendent of the Schools of Jersey City, who made valuable contributions in the earlier stages of the work, and to Professor E. M. Pease, of Leland Stanford Junior University, editor-in-chief of this series, whose criticisms and suggestions at every stage have been very helpful.

HIRAM TUELL.
HAROLD N. FOWLER.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	Introductory Matter	1
II.	First Declension. — *Subject and Direct Object* . . .	8
III.	First Declension (*continued*). — *Genitive with Nouns*.	11
IV.	Present Indicative of **Sum**. — *Agreement of Verbs*. .	12
V.	*Predicate Noun and Appositive*	14
VI.	Second Declension: Nouns in *-us*. — *Indirect Object* .	16
VII.	Second Declension: Nouns in *-um*. — Adjectives in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*. — *Agreement of Adjectives*	18
VIII.	Second Declension: Nouns in *-er* and *-ir*. — Imperfect Indicative of **Sum**	21
IX.	Adjectives in *-er*. — Future Indicative of **Sum**. — *Dative of Possessor*	23
X.	Third Declension: Mute Stems	26
XI.	Third Declension: Mute Stems (*continued*). — First Conjugation: Present Indicative Active	28
XII.	Third Declension: Liquid Stems. — First Conjugation: Imperfect Indicative Active	31
XIII.	Third Declension (*continued*). — First Conjugation: Future Indicative Active. — *Ablative of Instrument*	34
XIV.	Third Declension: Stems in *-i*. — First Conjugation: Perfect Indicative Active. — Perfect Indicative of **Sum**. — *Ablative of Manner*	36
XV.	Third Declension: Stems in *-i* (*continued*). — First Conjugation: Pluperfect and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. — Pluperfect and Future-Perfect Indicative of **Sum**. — *Ablative of Accompaniment*.	40
XVI.	Third Declension: Mixed Stems. — *Ablative of Time*.	44
XVII.	Third Declension. — Rules for Gender	47

CHAPTER		PAGE
XVIII.	Adjectives of Three Terminations. — First Conjugation: Present Indicative Passive. — *Ablative of Agent*	50
XIX.	Adjectives of Two Terminations. — First Conjugation: Imperfect Indicative Passive. — *Ablative of Cause*	53
XX.	Adjectives of One Termination. — First Conjugation: Future Indicative Passive. — *Ablative of Specification*	56
XXI.	First Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive. — *Descriptive Ablative*	59
XXII.	Comparison of Adjectives. — Declension of Comparatives. — *Ablative with Comparatives*	62
XXIII.	Comparison of Adjectives (*continued*). — *Partitive Genitive*	65
XXIV.	Irregular Comparison (*continued*). — *Ablative of Degree of Difference*	68
XXV.	Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	71
XXVI.	Fourth Declension. — Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Active	73
XXVII.	Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active. — *Dative with Adjectives*	75
XXVIII.	Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active	77
XXIX.	Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Passive. — Fifth Declension	79
XXX.	Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive. — Nine Irregular Adjectives. — Reading Lesson	82
XXXI.	Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive	85
XXXII.	Third Conjugation: Present Indicative Active. — Cardinal Numerals. — *Accusative of Extent.* — Reading Lesson	87
XXXIII.	Third Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active. — Ordinal Numerals	92

CHAPTER		PAGE
XXXIV.	Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. — Reading Lesson	94
XXXV.	Third Conjugation: Present and Imperfect Passive. — Possessive Pronouns	99
XXXVI.	Third Conjugation: Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive. — Reading Lesson	101
XXXVII.	Demonstrative Pronouns	104
XXXVIII.	Demonstrative Pronouns (*continued*). — Reading Lesson	106
XXXIX.	Fourth Conjugation: Present Indicative Active. — Relative Pronouns	109
XL.	Fourth Conjugation: Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. — Interrogative Pronouns. — Reading Lesson	112
XLI.	Fourth Conjugation: Passive Voice. — Indefinite Pronouns	115
XLII.	Infinitives of **Sum**: Infinitives of First and Second Conjugations. — *Indirect Discourse* (Oratio Obliqua): *Subject of the Infinitive.* — Reading Lesson	118
XLIII.	Infinitives of Third and Fourth Conjugations. — *Expressions of Place*	122
XLIV.	Verbs in *-io* of the Third Conjugation. — Reading Lesson	125
XLV.	Participles	128
XLVI.	Deponent Verbs. — Reading Lesson	130
XLVII.	**Possum.** — *Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse*	133
XLVIII.	Compounds of **Sum.** — *Dative with Compounds.* — Reading Lesson	136
XLIX.	*Dative with Intransitive Verbs*	138
L.	**Ferō** and Compounds of **Ferō**. — Reading Lesson	140
LI.	Irregular Verbs **Volō**, **Nōlō**, and **Mālō**	143
LII.	Irregular Verbs **Eō** and **Fīō**. — *Two Datives.* — Reading Lesson	145

CHAPTER		PAGE
LIII.	Derivation and Composition of Words	148
LIV.	Subjunctive Mood. — *Sequence of Tenses.* — *Indirect Questions*	152
LV.	First Conjugation: Subjunctive Active. — *Clauses of Purpose* (*Final Clauses*). — Reading Lesson	155
LVI.	First Conjugation: Subjunctive Passive. — *Clauses of Result* (*Consecutive Clauses*)	158
LVII.	Second Conjugation: Subjunctive Mood. — *Purpose and Result Clauses* (*continued*). — Reading Lesson	160
LVIII.	*Imperative Constructions.* — *Wishes*	163
LIX.	Third Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive. — *Conditional Sentences.* — Reading Lesson	166
LX.	Fourth Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive. — *Clauses with* **Cum**	172
LXI.	Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs. — *Indirect Discourse.* — Reading Lesson	176
LXII.	Participles (*Review*). — *Ablative Absolute*	181
LXIII.	Gerund and Gerundive. — Reading Lesson	185
LXIV.	Supine. — *Expressions of Purpose*	189
LXV.	Periphrastic Conjugations. — *Dative of Agent.* — Reading Lesson	193

Selections for Sight-Reading	199
Paradigms of Verbs	205
Vocabularies	229

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA

A First Book in Latin.

CHAPTER I.

Introduction.

1. ALPHABET.

The Latin alphabet has twenty-four letters: A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V,[1] X, Y, Z. It is the same as the English, with the omission of J and W. The letter I does duty for both I and J.

2. VOWELS.

The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*. They are either *long* (¯), *short* (˘), or *common* (˘̄); that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

All the long vowels will be marked in this book. Unmarked vowels are to be regarded as short.

3. CONSONANTS.

The consonants may be classified as follows: —

Mutes: { *p*, *b*, are *p* mutes. / *t*, *d*, are *t* mutes. / *k*, *c*, *g*, *q*, are *k* mutes.

[1] In pronunciation the Romans made *u* and *v* very much alike, and in many books *u* is printed for *v* and V for U. In fact, V is merely a consonant U. In this book, however, *u* and *v* are both used.

Liquids: *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*.
Spirants: *f*, *i* consonant, *s*, *v*; *s* is also a sibilant.
Double consonants: *x* = *cs* or *gs*, *z* = *ds*.
H is only the sign of a rough breathing.

Pronunciation.

NOTE. — Latin is now pronounced differently in different countries. English-speaking people use either the *Roman* or the *English* method.

4. ROMAN METHOD.

1. *Vowels.*

ā has the sound of *a* in *father*.
ē has the sound of *e* in *fête* (like *a* in *fate*).
ī has the sound of *i* in *machine*.
ō has the sound of *o* in *holy*.
ū has the sound of *oo* in *boot*.

y is rare. It was pronounced like *u* in French, or *ü* in German; that is, half-way between the sounds of ī and ū, as given above.

The short vowels have the same sound as the corresponding long ones, but require less time for utterance.

So ă is like *a* in *staff* (pronounced broadly).
ĕ is like *e* in *met*.
ĭ is like *i* in *pick*.
ŏ is like *o* in *wholly*.
ŭ is like *oo* in *book*.

2. *Diphthongs.*

ae has the sound of *ai* in *aisle*.
au has the sound of *ow* in *how*.
ei (rare) has the sound of *ei* in *eight*.
eu (rare) has the sound of *eu* in *feud*.
oe has the sound of *oi* in *boil*.

For *ui*, sometimes improperly called a diphthong, see **4**, 6.

3. *Consonants.*

Consonants have generally the same sounds as in English, but

c has always the sound of *c* in *can.*
g has always the sound of *g* in *game.*
i consonant has always the sound of *y* in *yet.*
s has always the sound of *s* in *son* or *yes.*[1]
t has always the sound of *t* in *tone.*[2]
v has always the sound of *w* in *we.*
ch has always the sound of *k.*

4. *Syllables.*

In a Latin word there are as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: a-gri-co-la, *farmer.* A single consonant between two vowels belongs in the syllable with the following vowel: a-mā-bam, *I was loving.*

Two or more consonants between two vowels belong with the following vowel, if they can be pronounced with it:[3] cō-gnō-scō, *I recognize;* in-du-stri-a, *diligence;* ne-gle-gen-ti-a, *carelessness;* for-tis, *brave;* al-tis-si-mus, *highest;* pu-el-la, *girl;* dī-xit, *he said.*

Compound words are divided into their component parts, sub-it, *under he goes.*

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima,* the syllable before the last the *penult,* and the syllable before the penult the *antepenult.*[4]

---

[1] Never soft nor like *sh.* [2] Never like *t* in *nation.*

[3] In other words, any combination of consonants that begins a Latin word can begin a syllable.

[4] *Ultima* is the Latin word for *last; penult* is shortened from *paene ultima, almost the last;* and *antepenult* means *before the penult.*

5. *Quantity of Vowels.*

NOTE. — In many instances the quantity of vowels can be learned only by observation, but the following rules will prove useful.

A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short: vĭ-a, *road;* nĭ-hil, *nothing.*

A vowel before *nd* or *nt* is short.

Diphthongs, and vowels produced by contraction are long: nau-ta, *sailor;* cō-gō (for cŏăgō), *I collect.*

A vowel before *nf, ns, gm, gn,* and consonant *i,* is long: cōnfer, *compare;* amāns, *loving;* āgmen, *line of march;* cō-gnōscō, *recognize;* cūius, *of whom.*

6. *Quantity of Syllables.*

A syllable is long by nature when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: mā-ter, *mother;* Cae-sar, *Cæsar.*

A syllable is long by position when it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants[1] or *x* or *z:* men-tis, *of the mind;* dux, *leader.*

A syllable is common when it contains a short vowel followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: a-grī, *fields.*

After *q, ng,* and sometimes *s,* also in cuī (from quī and quis) and huīc (from hīc), *u* is pronounced together with the preceding letter, as in the English *queen.* It has no effect upon the quantity of the syllable in which or after which it stands: ali-cuī, *to any one;* un-guĭ-nis, *of a finger-nail;* quīs, *who* (interrogative); quī, *who* (relative); cōn-suē-scō, *I am accustomed.*

---

[1] Observe that a long *syllable* does not necessarily contain a long *vowel.* In mēnsa, *table,* the *e* is long; the word is therefore to be pronounced *main-sa.* In mentis, *of the mind,* the *e* is short, and the word is pronounced *mĕn-tis.* The letter *h* is not a consonant, and does not affect the length of syllables.

7. *Accent.*

Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: pa'-ter, *father;* mā'-ter, *mother.*

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult when that is long; otherwise on the antepenult: ca-pel'-la, *a goat;* e-pi'-stu-la, *a letter;* te'-ne-brae, *darkness.*

A few short words called enclitics are added to the end of other words. The accent then falls upon the syllable before the enclitic: ego'que, *and I;* ībis'ne, *shall you go?*

5. ENGLISH METHOD.

Latin is pronounced by the English method just as if the words were English. The rules for quantity and accent are the same as in the Roman method, but the rules for quantity are generally disregarded except in so far as they affect the accent. In dividing words into syllables those who adopt the English pronunciation should observe the following rules: —

1. A single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r* following a penultimate or any unaccented vowel belongs with the following vowel: pa-ter, *father;* re-gi-na, *queen;* ma-tro-na, *matron.*

2. A single consonant belongs with any preceding accented vowel, not penultimate, except *u*, but not when *e* or *i* before another vowel follows: dom-i-nus, *master;* but mo-ne-o, *I advise.*

3. In all other cases two or more consonants between two vowels are separated: cor-pus, *body;* im-pro-bus, *wicked.*

6. PARTS OF SPEECH.

The kinds of words used in language are called parts of speech. They are the noun, the adjective, the pronoun,

the verb, and the particles, which include the adverb, the preposition, the conjunction, and the interjection.

7. GENDER.

The names of males, rivers, winds, and months are masculine: Caesar, *Caesar;* vir, *man;* Rhēnus, *Rhine;* Notus, *South wind;* Iānuārius, *January.*

The names of females, countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine: Iūlia, *Julia;* fīlia, *daughter;* Ītalia, *Italy;* Rōma, *Rome;* Britannia, *Britain;* pōpulus, *poplar.*

Indeclinable nouns are neuter: nihil, *nothing.*

Special rules will be given later.

8. INFLECTION.

The relations between words are denoted in English for the most part by means of prepositions and auxiliaries or by the order of the words. When we say *the master of the house,* the relation between *master* and *house* is denoted by the preposition *of;* when we say *the dog bites the man,* the relation between the *dog,* the *act of biting,* and the *man,* is denoted by the order of the words; for if the order is reversed, the relations are also reversed. When we say *I love him,* the forms of the words show the relations. In Latin the relations between words are denoted almost exclusively by the forms of the words themselves, the forms being different according to the relations to be expressed. The changes in form which a word undergoes to denote different relations constitute the *Inflection* of the word. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, is called *Declension;* the inflection of verbs is called *Conjugation.*

1. *Declension.*

Declined words have in Latin seven cases: *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative,* and *Locative.*

The Nominative is the case of the subject of the sentence.

The Genitive is used to denote possession and some other relations, and is most frequently to be rendered by *of* in English.

The Dative is the case of the indirect object, and is most frequently to be rendered by *to* or *for.*

The Accusative is the case of the direct object.

The Vocative is the case of the person addressed. It has almost always the same form as the Nominative.

The Ablative expresses various relations to be expressed in English by prepositions; as, *from, with, by, in,* etc.

The Locative case denotes the place in which. This case exists only in names of towns and a few other words, and has generally the same form as the Dative or Ablative, sometimes that of the Genitive.

There are five ways of declining nouns; hence there are said to be five declensions.

Adjectives and pronouns are also declined, but with different forms for different genders.

2. *Conjugation.*

Latin verbs have three moods, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative; also Infinitives, Participles, Gerund, Gerundive, and Supines.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

The tenses of verbs in Latin are the same as in English: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect.

There are in Latin, as in English, two voices, the Active and the Passive.

9. NUMBER.

In Latin, as in English, there are two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*. Inflected words have in Latin different forms for the two numbers.

CHAPTER II.

First or *a*-Declension.

10. PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	mēnsa, *a table.*	mēnsae, *tables.*
G.	mēnsae, *of a table.*	mēnsārum, *of tables.*
D.	mēnsae, *to* or *for a table.*	mēnsīs, *to* or *for tables.*
Ac.	mēnsam, *table.*	mēnsās, *tables.*
V.	mēnsa, *thou table.*	mēnsae, *ye tables.*
Ab.	mēnsā, *from, by, with,* etc., *a table.*	mēnsīs, *from, by, with,* etc., *tables.*

1. In the above paradigm which cases are alike?

2. What is the quantity of final *a* in the nominative singular?

3. The cases are formed by adding endings to a common part, called the stem.

4. In the first declension the stem ends in *ā*. This

final *ā* of the stem is called the stem-vowel[1] or characteristic.

5. The stem-vowel joined with the case-ending forms the termination.

6. The stem is **mēnsā**, and may be found by dropping the ending *-rum* of the genitive plural.

7. Make a table of terminations from the paradigm above, and commit them to memory.

8. GENDER. — Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males.

11. VOCABULARY.

Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia.
domina, -ae, *f.*, mistress.
epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter.
fābula, -ae, *f.*, story.
Iūlia, -ae, *f.*, Julia.
mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table.
pictūra, -ae, *f.*, picture.
puella, -ae, *f.*, girl.
rēgīna, -ae, *f.*, queen.
rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose.
serva, -ae, *f.*, female servant, slave.

amat, he, she, *or* it loves.
amant, they love.
laudat, he, she, *or* it praises
laudant, they praise.
habet, he, she, *or* it has.
habent, they have.
nārrat, he, she, *or* it tells.
nārrant, they tell.
et, *conj.*, and.
quid, what.

Decline the nouns in the vocabulary like **mēnsa**.

12. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Rēgīna Iūliam amat,**
   Iūliam rēgīna amat,
   Amat Iūliam rēgīna,
   } *the queen loves Julia.*

2. **Iūlia amat rēgīnam,**
   Rēgīnam amat Iūlia,
   Amat rēgīnam Iūlia,
   } *Julia loves the queen.*

[1] The stem-vowel does not usually appear, and sometimes the case-ending is lost.

3. { **Epistulās Iūlia habet,** / **Iūlia epistulās habet,** / **Habet epistulās Iūlia,** } *Julia has the letters.*

4. { **Puella pictūram habet,** / **Pictūram habet puella,** / **Pictūram puella habet,** } *the girl has a picture.*

Notice in the above sentences that *a*, *an*, or *the* is used in the translation whenever the sense requires it, but that there are no corresponding Latin words. Notice, also, that the subject is in the nominative, and the object in the accusative.

13. Rule. — *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.*

14. Rule. — *The direct object is in the accusative.*

15. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Puella fābulam nārrat. 2. Rēgīna puellās laudat. 3. Servae dominam amant. 4. Domina servās laudat. 5. Puellae Iūliam laudant. 6. Cornēlia et Iūlia epistulās habent. 7. Domina mēnsam et pictūram habet. 8. Puellae fābulās nārrant. 9. Quid habet Cornēlia? 10. Rosam habet.

II. 1. Cornelia tells stories. 2. She praises the servant. 3. The girls have roses. 4. They praise the queen. 5. The girl has a letter. 6. Julia has a table and pictures. 7. The servant loves the mistress. 8. The queen praises Julia and Cornelia. 9. The servants love the girls. 10. What have the girls?

CHAPTER III.

First or *a*-Declension. — *Continued.*

Genitive with Nouns.

16. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puella bonam rēgīnam amat,** *the girl loves the good queen.*
2. **Rēgīna bona servās habet,** *the good queen has servants.*
3. **Iūlia servam Cornēliae laudat,** *Julia praises Cornelia's servant (the servant of Cornelia).*
4. **Rēgīna rosae pictūram laudat,** *the queen praises the picture of the rose.*

Notice that the adjectives have the same terminations as their substantives, and that the adjective[1] may precede or follow its substantive. Notice, also, that *Cornēliae* limits *servam*, and does not mean the same person; that *rosae* limits *pictūram*, and does not mean the same thing; and that *Cornēliae* and *rosae* are in the genitive.

17. RULE. — *A noun limiting another noun and not meaning the same person or thing is in the genitive.*

18. VOCABULARY.

agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer.
āla, -ae, *f.*, wing.
columba, -ae, *f.*, dove.
fīlia,[2] -ae, *f.*, daughter.
nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor.
patria, -ae, *f.*, native land.
poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet.
alba, white.
bona, good.
fīda, faithful, trusty.
longa, long.

1. Notice the gender of each noun in the above vocabulary. See **10**. 8.

---

[1] The adjective when emphatic precedes its substantive, otherwise it follows it. It more often precedes.

[2] The dative and ablative plural of fīlia is usually fīliābus.

2. The adjectives given above are to be used only with feminine nouns, and are to be declined like **mēnsa**.

3. Decline together **bona puella, rosa alba, fīda serva.**

19. EXERCISE.

I. 1. Poēta bonam fābulam nārrat. 2. Agricolae fīdās servās laudant. 3. Fīlia agricolae albam columbam habet. 4. Rēgīna bonam puellam amat. 5. Fīliae nautārum longās epistulās habent. 6. Nautae longās fābulās nārrant. 7. Columba albās ālās habet. 8. Puella poētārum fābulās laudat. 9. Domina Iūliae mēnsam longam habet. 10. Nauta patriam amat.

II. 1. Poets tell good stories. 2. Cornelia loves the good daughter of the sailor. 3. The queen's daughter has pictures. 4. The faithful girl loves the good queen. 5. The poet praises the good girl's letter. 6. The sailor tells a good story. 7. Julia has faithful servants. 8. What has the farmer's daughter? 9. She has a white rose. 10. The girls praise the poets of their native land.

CHAPTER IV.

Present Indicative of Sum.

Agreement of Verbs.

20. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
First Person, **sum**, *I am*.	**sumus**, *we are*.
Second Person, **es**, *thou art*.	**estis**, *you are*.
Third Person, **est**, *he*, *she*, or *it is*.	**sunt**, *they are*.

21. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puella rosās habet**, *the girl has roses.*
2. **Puellae rosās habent**, *the girls have roses.*
3. **Est bona**, *she is good.*
4. **Sumus fīdae**, *we are faithful.*

Notice that the subjects in (3) and (4) are not expressed by separate words, but by the form of the verbs. Notice, also, that the verbs have different forms for subjects of different persons and numbers.

22. RULE. — *A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

23. VOCABULARY.

aqua, **-ae**, *f.*, water.
Britannia, **-ae**, *f.*, Britain.
silva, **-ae**, *f.*, forest, woods.
grāta, welcome, pleasing.
laeta, glad, cheerful.
lāta, broad.
māgna, large.
parva, small.
sum, I am.
in (*prep. with abl.*), in, on.
sed, *conj.*, but.
ubi, *adv.*, where.

24. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sumus laetae. 2. Estis bonae. 3. Silvae Britanniae sunt māgnae. 4. Ubi est aqua? 5. Aqua est in silvā. 6. Fābulae poētārum sunt grātae. 7. Agricolae[1] mēnsa est lāta. 8. Ālae columbārum sunt albae. 9. Es fīda. 10. Rēgīna fīliam[2] parvam laudat. 11. Pictūrae sunt grātae. 12. Rēgīna est in Britanniā, sed fīlia est in patriā.

---

[1] The genitive when it is emphatic is put before the noun which it limits.

[2] The possessive pronouns *his*, *her*, *its*, and *their*, are often omitted in Latin, and must be supplied in translating.

II. 1. I am glad. 2. We are small. 3. Water is good. 4. You are faithful. 5. The sailor's letters are welcome. 6. The native land of the queen is large. 7. (There)[1] are broad forests in Britain. 8. The servants love (their) good mistress. 9. The poet tells a pleasing story. 10. (There) are doves in the forests. 11. What has the little girl? 12. She has a white dove. 13. The farmer is in the woods.

CHAPTER V.

Predicate Noun; Appositive.

25. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puella est serva,** *the girl is a slave.*
2. **Poēta est agricola,** *the poet is a farmer.*
3. **Iūlia est bona domina,** *Julia is a good mistress.*

Notice that *serva*, *agricola*, and *domina* are in the predicate and denote the same person as *puella*, *poēta*, and *Iūlia*. A noun thus used is called a *predicate noun*.

26. RULE. — *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.*

27. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Poēta Iūliam fīliam amat,** *the poet loves his daughter Julia.*
2. **Poēta servam Iūliae fīliae laudat,** *the poet praises the servant of his daughter Julia.*

[1] Words in parenthesis are not to be expressed in Latin.

Notice that *fīliam* denotes the same person as *Iūliam*, and is in the same case, but is not a predicate noun. Notice, also, that *fīliae* denotes the same person as *Iūliae*, and is in the same case, but is not a predicate noun. Nouns thus used are called *appositives*.

28. RULE. — *The appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.*

29. VOCABULARY.

aquila, **-ae**, *f.*, eagle.
fēmina, **-ae**, *f.*, woman.
Galba, **-ae**, *m.*, Galba.
Graecia, **-ae**, *f.*, Greece.
incola, **-ae**, *m. and f.*, inhabitant.
īnsula, **-ae**, *f.*, island.
pecūnia, **-ae**, *f.*, money, a sum of money.
cāra, dear.
multa, much.
vocat, he calls.
vocant, they call.

30. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Es cāra fīlia. 2. Aquila est silvārum incola. 3. Graecia est poētārum patria. 4. Poēta fīliam Cornēliam amat. 5. Ālae aquilārum sunt lātae. 6. Fēmina puellās parvās vocat. 7. Britannia est māgna īnsula. 8. Rēgīnae fīlia māgnam pecūniam habet. 9. Nautae fīliae sunt fīdae servae. 10. Agricolae multās columbās habent. 11. Ubi est agricola Galba?

II. 1. The queen is a good woman. 2. She praises (her) daughter Julia. 3. (There) are large forests in (my) native land. 4. The little girl calls (her) doves. 5. The inhabitants of the island are sailors. 6. Cornelia's letters are welcome. 7. The wings of the dove are long and white. 8. (There) is good water on the island. 9. I am a farmer, but you are a sailor. 10. The queen and (her) daughter Julia are glad.

CHAPTER VI.

Second or *o*-Declension: Nouns in -us.

Indirect Object.

31. PARADIGM.

servus, *m.*, *slave.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	servus	servī
G.	servī	servōrum
D.	servō	servīs
Ac.	servum	servōs
V.	serve	servī
Ab.	servō	servīs

1. In the above paradigm, what cases are alike?

2. The stem ends in *-ŏ*; as, **servŏ-**.

3. The stem may be found by dropping the ending *-rum* of the genitive plural, and changing *ō* to *ŏ*.

4. Make a table of the terminations and commit them to memory.

5. GENDER. — Nouns in *-us* of the second declension are masculine.

32. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Galba fīliae fābulam nārrat**, *Galba tells a story to his daughter.*
2. **Nautae agricolīs fābulās nārrant**, *the sailors tell stories to the farmers.*

Notice that *fīliae* is in the dative and depends upon *nārrat;* and that *agricolīs* is in the dative and depends upon *nārrant.* Such datives are called *indirect objects.*

33. RULE. — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative.*

OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

34. VOCABULARY.

amīcus, **-ī**, *m.*, friend.
dīligentia, **-ae**, *f.*, diligence.
dominus, **-ī**, *m.*, master (of servants).
equus, **-ī**, *m.*, horse.
fīlius, **-ī**, *m.*, son.
Helvētius, **-ī**, Helvetian; *as a noun*, a Helvetian.
hortus, **-ī**, *m.*, garden.
servus, **-ī**, *m.*, servant, slave.
Titus, **-ī**, *m.*, Titus.
dat, he gives.
dant, they give.

1. Each of the adjectives thus far introduced, when used with masculine nouns, has a masculine form declined like servus.

For the feminine form, see **18**.

2. Decline together **bonus servus**, **hortus māgnus**, **albus equus**.

35. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Amīcus Gălbae multōs equōs habĕt. 2. Equus albus est in hortō agricolae. 3. Titus fīliō equum album dat. 4. Dominus bonōs servōs laudat. 5. Dominī servīs fīdīs pecūniam dant. 6. Fēminae dīligentiam servārum laudant. 7. Fīlius agricolae māgnum hortum habet. 8. Fēmina amīcō cārō epistulam longam dat. 9. Nautae sunt amīcī rēgīnae. 10. Ubi, Tite, est equus agricolae Galbae? 11. In hortō est agricolae Galbae equus.

II. 1. The slave has a good horse. 2. The islands of Greece are many. 3. He tells good stories to (his) friends. 4. They are friends of Titus. 5. There are many horses on the island. 6. The island is small, but it has many inhabitants. 7. The slaves praise (their) master's daughter. 8. The poet is an inhabitant of Britain. 9. He gives water to (his) friend's horses. 10. Eagles have broad wings.

CHAPTER VII.

Second or *o*-Declension: Nouns in -um; Adjectives in -us, -a, -um.

Agreement of Adjectives.

36. PARADIGM.

bellum, *n.*, *war.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., *Ac.*, *V.*	bellum	bella
G.	bellī	bellōrum
D., *Ab.*	bellō	bellīs

1. The stem ends in *ŏ*; as, bellŏ.

2. GENDER. — Nouns in *-um* are neuter.

3. Each adjective thus far introduced, when used with a neuter noun, has a neuter form declined like bellum.

These adjectives are declined in full as follows: —

37. PARADIGM.

Bonus, *good.*

	SINGULAR.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	bonus	bona	bonum
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum
V.	bone	bona	bonum
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō

		PLURAL.	
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonōs	bonās	bona
V.	bonī	bonae	bona
Ab.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

38. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Hortus est māgnus.**
2. **Hortī sunt māgnī.**
3. **Mēnsa est māgna.**
4. **Mēnsae sunt māgnae.**
5. **Dōnum est māgnum.**
6. **Dōna sunt māgna.**
7. **Laetum nautam amat.**
8. **Laētos nautās amant.**

Observe that each noun in the preceding sentences is limited by an adjective, and that each adjective has the same gender, number, and case as its noun. Notice especially *laetum* and *laetōs*.

39. RULE. — *An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.*

40. VOCABULARY.

bellum, **-ī**, *n.*, war.
concilium,[1] **-ī**, *n.*, meeting, council.
dōnum, **-ī**, *n.*, gift.
iniūria, **-ae**, *f.*, wrong.
nūntius,[1] **-ī**, *m.*, a messenger.
malus, **-a**, **-um**, bad.
Rōmānus, **-a**, **-um**, Roman; *as a noun*, a Roman.
cēlat, he conceals.
cēlant, they conceal.
convocat, he calls together.
convocant, they call together.
culpat, he blames.
culpant, they blame.

[1] Nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* generally contract *iī* of the genitive singular into *ī* without changing the accent.

Adjectives already used in the masculine or feminine: —

albus, -a, -um.	**laetus, -a, -um.**
bonus, -a, -um.	**lātus, -a, -um.**
cārus, -a, -um.	**longus, -a, -um.**
fīdus, -a, -um.	**māgnus, -a, -um.**
grātus, -a, -um.	**multus, -a, -um.**
Helvētius, -a, -um.	**parvus, -a, -um.**

41. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Malus servus in silvā equum dominī cēlat. 2. Nūntius fīdus concilium Rōmānōrum convocat. 3. Amīcīs multa dōna dat. 4. Dominī iniūriās servōrum cēlant. 5. Nauta agricolae grātum dōnum dat. 6. Ālae columbārum albārum sunt māgnae. 7. Nūntius Rōmānōrum in conciliō Helvētiōs culpat. 8. Incolae Brĭtanniae rēgīnam amant. 9. Bellum in Graeciā est māgnum. 10. In silvā sunt māgnae aquilae. 11. Ubi, amīce, est equus nūntī?

II. 1. The messenger tells a long story to the Romans. 2. We are faithful servants. 3. The slave conceals (his) money in the garden. 4. He is a Roman messenger. 5. The poet's little son is fond of stories. 6. (There) are large roses in the garden. 7. Galba is a friend of the Helvetians. 8. The farmer's son has a large horse. 9. The servant is calling (his) master's horses. 10. He calls together (his) dear friends. 11. The diligence of the girls is great.

CHAPTER VIII.

Second or *o*-Declension: Nouns in -er and -ir.

Imperfect Indicative of the Verb Sum.

42. PARADIGMS.

	puer, *m.*, *boy.*	**ager**,[1] *m.*, *field.*	**vir**, *m.*, *man.*
		SINGULAR.	
N.	puer	ager	vir
G.	puerī	agrī	virī
D.	puerō	agrō	virō
Ac.	puerum	agrum	virum
V.	puer	ager	vir
Ab.	puerō	agrō	virō
		PLURAL.	
N.	puerī	agrī	virī
G.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
D.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
Ac.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
V.	puerī	agrī	virī
Ab.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

1. How do the terminations of nouns in *-er* and *-ir* differ from those of nouns in *-us* ?

2. What is the stem of puer ? of ager ? See **31.** 3.

3. Decline together puer parvus, lātus ager, vir fīdus.

4. GENDER. — Nouns in *-er* and *-ir* of the second declension are masculine.

---

[1] Most nouns in *-er* are declined like **ager**. The only one in this book declined like **puer** is līberī (plural).

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

43. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	**eram**, *I was.*	**erāmus**, *we were.*
2.	**erās**, *you were.*	**erātis**, *you were.*
3.	**erat**, *he was.*	**erant**, *they were.*

44. VOCABULARY.

ager, agrī, *m.*, field.
dīscipulus, -ī, *m.*, pupil.
līberī, -ōrum, *m.*, children.
magister, -trī, *m.*, teacher.[1]
Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus.
puer, puerī, *m.*, boy.
vir, virī, *m.*, man.
perītus, -a, -um, skillful.
nōn, *adv.*, not.
semper, *adv.*, always.

45. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Fīlius Titī erat nōn laetus. 2. Eram amīcus fīlī[1] magistrī. 3. Erās semper fīdus amīcus. 4. Poēta Rōmānus dīligentiam agricolae perītī laudat. 5. Vir equum amīcī in agrō habet. 6. Erāmus dīscipulī fīdī. 7. Amīcus Galbae erat agricola perītus. 8. Rōmānī concilium convocant et nūntium Helvētiōrum culpant. 9. Helvētiī fēminās et līberōs in silvā cēlant. 10. Magister bonōs puerōs semper laudat. 11. Rōmānī iniūriās Helvētiōrum culpant. 12. Mārcus semper erat poētārum amīcus.

II. 1. Many were the wars of the Romans. 2. You were good children. 3. Galba was a welcome messenger. 4. The man gives a horse to his son. 5. The Roman farmers were not skillful. 6. The bad boys were in the farmer's garden. 7. The letters of friends are always welcome. 8. You were a faithful pupil, but (your) friend Marcus was not faithful. 9. We were always good boys. 10. Good masters do not always have faithful servants. 11. Galba's horse is the gift of a friend.

[1] See footnote to **40**.

CHAPTER IX.

Adjectives in -er.

Future Indicative of the Verb Sum ; Dative of Possessor.

46. PARADIGMS.

Miser, *wretched.*

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	miser	misera	miserum
G.	miserī	miserae	miserī
D.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum
V.	miser	misera	miserum
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō

PLURAL.

N.	miserī	miserae	misera
G.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserōs	miserās	misera
V.	miserī	miserae	misera
Ab.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

Pulcher, *beautiful.*

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
V.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

	PLURAL.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
V.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

1. Observe that the masculine has the same peculiarities as substantives in *-er*. What are they?

2. Most adjectives in *-er* of the second declension are declined like **pulcher**. The only exceptions in this book are **miser** and **līber**. Decline together **miser servus, equus niger.**

47. FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	**erō**, *I shall be.*	**erimus**, *we shall be.*
2.	**eris**, *you will be.*	**eritis**, *you will be.*
3.	**erit**, *he will be.*	**erunt**, *they will be.*

48. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puer librum habet**, *the boy has a book.*
2. **Est puerō liber**, *the boy has (there is to the boy) a book.*
3. **Titus equum habet**, *Titus has a horse.*
4. **Est Titō equus**, *Titus has (there is to Titus) a horse.*

1. Notice the two ways of expressing possession. The form with the dative and the verb *sum* should be used in the exercises, unless the teacher prefer to have the sentence expressed in two ways. The dative thus used is called the *dative of possessor*.

49. RULE. — *The dative is used with* **sum** *to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject in the nominative case.*

50. VOCABULARY.

carrus, **-ī**, *m.*, cart.
frūmentum, **-ī**, *n.*, grain.
līber, **-brī**, *m.*, book.
dēfessus, **-a**, **-um**, tired.
līber, **-era**, **-erum**, free.
niger, **-gra**, **-grum**, black.
pulcher, **-chra**, **-chrum**, beautiful.
dēlectat, he delights.
dēlectant, they delight.
miser, **-era**, **-erum**, wretched, unhappy.

51. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Es agricola, eris poēta. 2. Nūntius in silvā equum dēfessum cēlat. 3. Fīliō agricolae est carrus māgnus. 4. Fīlius agricolae carrum māgnum habet. 5. Vir frūmentum non habet. 6. Virō est frūmentum in carrō. 7. Aqua erit in mēnsā servī. 8. Equī nūntiōrum erunt dēfessī. 9. Helvētiī erant līberī. 10. Vir fīliae pulchrum librum dat. 11. Agrī et silvae semper poētam dēlectant. 12. Perītī magistrī dīligentiam dīscipulōrum laudant. 13. Eritis amīcī puerōrum miserōrum. 14. Mārcus nigrō equō frūmentum dat. 15. Erimus fīdī dīscipulī.

II. 1. I shall be tired. 2. The boy has a beautiful book. 3. He gives the boy a white dove. 4. He calls together the friends of the messenger. 5. Where are the master's books? 6. The diligence of the boy delights (his) faithful teacher. 7. You will be faithful, and we shall be grateful. 8. There will be a meeting of teachers in my friend's garden. 9. The slaves were unhappy. 10. He always praises the faithful.[1] 11. The children have many beautiful presents.

[1] Plural adjectives are frequently used in Latin, as in English, without a substantive. When the substantive understood denotes persons, the adjective should be in the masculine; but when the word *things* can be understood, the adjective should be neuter.

Compare the English, "The land of the *free*, and the home of the *brave*."

CHAPTER X.

Third Declension.

Mute Stems.

52. PARADIGMS.

	prīnceps, *m.*, *chief.*	**rēx**, *m.*, *king.*	**mīles**, *m.*, *soldier.*	**caput**, *n.*, *head.*
Stem	**prīncip-**	**rēg-**	**mīlit-**	**capit-**
		SINGULAR.		
N., V.	prīnceps	rēx	mīles	caput
G.	prīncip**is**	rēg**is**	mīlit**is**	capit**is**
D.	prīncipī	rēgī	mīlitī	capitī
Ac.	prīncip**em**	rēg**em**	mīlit**em**	caput
Ab.	prīncip**e**	rēg**e**	mīlit**e**	capit**e**
		PLURAL.		
N., Ac., V.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capit**a**
G.	prīncip**um**	rēg**um**	mīlit**um**	capit**um**
D., Ab.	prīncip**ibus**	rēg**ibus**	mīlit**ibus**	capit**ibus**

1. In the third declension, the stem ends in a consonant or *i*.

2. Stems ending in a consonant, are classed according to their final letter, as mute stems and liquid stems.[1]

3. To find the stem, drop the ending *-um* of the genitive plural.

4. Make a table of the case-endings from **prīnceps**.

5. Notice that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in the nominative.

---

[1] For sibilant stems, see **61**.

What happens when *c* or *g* precedes the ending *s*? When *t* precedes the ending *s*?

53. VOCABULARY.

caput, -itis, *n.*, head.
iūdex, -icis, *m.*, judge.
mīles, -itis, *m.*, soldier.
pīlum, -ī, *n.*, javelin.
prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*, chief.
rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king.
cottīdiē, *adv.*, daily.
saepe, *adv.*, often.
vāstat, he lays waste.
vāstant, they lay waste.

54. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mīles multās bellī fābulās puerīs cottīdiē nārrat. 2. Bella longa bonōs virōs nōn dēlectant. 3. Mīlitēs agrōs agricolārum vāstant. 4. Rēx multōs[1] et fīdōs servōs habet. 5. Iūdicī sunt multī et bonī librī. 6. Rēgēs et prīncipēs saepe multōs et pulchrōs equōs habent. 7. Fīlius mīlitis erat perītus agricola. 8. Iūdex puerīs librōs bonōs dat. 9. Multī puerī fābulās mīlitum amant. 10. Caput equī nigrī est parvum. 11. Mīlitēs Rōmānī longa pīla habent.

II. 1. The horse has a large head. 2. The king's soldiers lay waste the broad fields. 3. The judge's son has many friends. 4. The chiefs of the Helvetians give grain to their friends. 5. The teacher praises (his) faithful pupils. 6. The wretched slave will be free. 7. Good books do not always delight children. 8. The soldier gives grain and water to (his) tired horses. 9. The soldier has a large black horse. 10. The farmer has grain in (his) cart. 11. Good chiefs have faithful soldiers.

---

[1] In Latin two adjectives limiting the same substantive are generally connected by the conjunction **et**.

CHAPTER XI.

Third Declension: Mute Stems. — *Continued.*

First Conjugation, Present Indicative Active.

55. PARADIGMS.

	voluptās, *f.*, *pleasure.*	**pēs**, *m.*, *foot.*	**cūstōs**, *m. and f.*, *keeper.*
Stem	**voluptāt-**	**ped-**	**cūstōd-**
	SINGULAR.		
N., V.	voluptās	pēs	cūstōs
G.	voluptāt**is**	ped**is**	cūstōd**is**
D.	voluptātī	pedī	cūstōdī
Ac.	voluptāt**em**	ped**em**	cūstōd**em**
Ab.	voluptāt**e**	ped**e**	cūstōd**e**
	PLURAL.		
N., Ac., V.	voluptāt**ēs**	ped**ēs**	cūstōd**ēs**
G.	voluptāt**um**	ped**um**	cūstōd**um**
D., Ab.	voluptāt**ibus**	ped**ibus**	cūstōd**ibus**

What happens when *d* or *t* precedes the nominative ending *s*?

56. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts[1] *of Amō.*

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.[2]
amō, *I love;*	**amāre**, *to love;*	**amāvī**, *I loved;*	**amātum**, *to love.*

[1] These are called principal parts because, when these are known, all forms of the verb may be readily found.

[2] The supine is the same in form as the neuter of the perfect participle.

1. To find the present stem of a verb, drop the final *re* of the present infinitive active.

2. Verbs are said to be of the first conjugation, when the present stem ends in *ā*; *i.e.* when the present infinitive active ends in *āre*.

3. Give the principal parts of **laudō, nārrō, vocō, cēlō, culpō, dēlectō, vāstō.**

4. **Dō, dăre, dedī, dătum,** which resembles a verb of the first conjugation, has a short stem-vowel, *ă*.

57. PARADIGM.

Present Indicative Active of Amō.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	**amō,** *I love.*[1]	**amāmus,** *we love.*
2.	**amās,** *you love.*	**amātis,** *you love.*
3.	**amat,** *he loves.*	**amant,** *they love.*

Make a table of the terminations and commit them to memory.

58. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Laudō, laudāmus. 2. Nārrās, nārrātis. 3. Puer vocat, equum vocat. 4. Cēlās, cēlāmus. 5. Agricola servum culpat. 6. Mīlitēs culpās. 7. Puellās culpāmus. 8. Aquam equīs damus. 9. Puerōs vocās. 10. Fīdōs servōs laudātis.

II. 1. I tell, we tell. 2. You are praising, he does praise. 3. We are calling, he is calling. 4. I conceal, you are concealing. 5. He is calling, the master is

[1] Also *I do love*, and *I am loving*.

calling. 6. He calls together the chiefs. 7. He is calling together (his) friends. 8. It pleases the poet. 9. We give gifts. 10. He does give gifts.

59. VOCABULARY.

comes, -itis, *m. and f.*, companion.
cūstōs, -ōdis, *m. and f.*, guard, keeper.
eques, -itis, *m.*, horseman; *in plural*, cavalry.
lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone.
obses, -idis, *m. and f.*, hostage.
pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot.
voluptās, -ātis, *f.*, pleasure.
līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, set free.
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare.
parātus, -a, -um (*perf. part. of* **parō**, *used as adj.*), prepared, ready.
currit, he runs.
currunt, they run.
in (*prep. with acc.*), into, to, against.

60. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Equitī pulchrum equum dō. 2. Amāmus fīdōs amīcōs. 3. Rēx mīlitēs dēfessōs culpat. 4. Līberī prīncipum Helvētiōrum erant obsidēs. 5. Librōs comitum cēlās. 6. Comes nautae erat miser. 7. Iūdicis fīlium cottīdiē laudāmus. 8. Multae sunt voluptātēs agricolae fīliōrum. 9. Caput equī est nigrum, sed pedēs sunt albī. 10. Fīdī cūstōdēs nōn sunt rēgī. 11. In agrīs erant lapidēs multī. 12. Agrōs rēgis vāstātis. 13. Equitēs equīs frūmentum parant. 14. Equus iūdicis in hortum currit. 15. Helvētiī parātī erant obsidēs dare.

II. 1. Many men love pleasure. 2. The weary soldier conceals (his) wrong. 3. The hostages of the Romans run into the woods. 4. The companions of kings are not always good. 5. The soldier's javelin was long. 6. The cavalry set free the hostages. 7. I often censure bad pupils, and you always love the good. 8. The feet of

OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

the horsemen will be free. 9. The horsemen have grain in carts. 10. We tell stories to the little children every day.

CHAPTER XII.

Third Declension: Liquid Stems.

First Conjugation, Imperfect Indicative Active.

61. PARADIGMS.

	cōnsul, *m.*, *consul.*	**victor**, *m.*, *victor.*	**virgō**, *f.*, *virgin.*	**vulnus**, *n.*, *wound.*
Stem	**cōnsul-**	**victor-**	**virgin-**	**vulner-**[1]
		SINGULAR.		
N., *V.*	cōnsul	victor	virgō	vulnus
G.	cōnsulis	victōris	virginis	vulneris
D.	cōnsulī	victōrī	virginī	vulnerī
Ac.	cōnsulem	victōrem	virginem	vulnus
Ab.	cōnsule	victōre	virgine	vulnere
		PLURAL.		
N., *Ac.*, *V.*	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	virginēs	vulnera
G.	cōnsulum	victōrum	virginum	vulnerum
D., *Ab.*	cōnsulibus	victōribus	virginibus	vulneribus

62. In English, questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* require no interrogative word. For the Latin method of expressing such questions, see the following sentences: —

[1] This was originally an *s* stem, but *s* was changed to *r*.

1. **Puerumne, Iūlia, culpās ?** *Do you blame the boy, Julia?*
2. **Nōnne servus est miser?** *Is not the slave unhappy?* or, *The slave is unhappy, is he not?*
3. **Num magister vocat?** *Is the master calling?* or, *The master is not calling, is he?*

The interrogative *ne* is an enclitic, always appended to the emphatic word. See **4.** and **7.**

Nōnne expects the answer *yes; num* expects the answer *no; ne* does not indicate what answer is expected.

63. PARADIGM.

Imperfect Indicative Active of Amō.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	**amābam**, *I was loving.*[1]	**amābāmus**, *we were loving.*
2.	**amābās**, *you were loving.*	**amābātis**, *you were loving.*
3.	**amābat**, *he was loving.*	**amābant**, *they were loving.*

Inflect the imperfect indicative active of **laudō, nārrō, vocō, dō, cēlō, culpō, parō, vāstō.**

64. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Culpābās, culpābātis. 2. Laudābam, laudābāmus. 3. Cēlābat, cēlābant. 4. Parābam, parābat, parābant. 5. Servus labōrābat, cottīdiē labōrat. 6. Nārrābās, puellae nārrābant. 7. Vocābam, vocābāmus. 8. Dabat, dabās, dabant. 9. Columbam līberābat. 10. Prīncipem culpāmus.

II. 1. I was blaming, we were blaming. 2. He was praising, they were praising. 3. You were calling, he was calling. 4. I was calling, we were calling. 5. He was giving, we were giving. 6. He was telling, the boy is telling. 7. I am preparing, I was preparing. 8. They are laying waste, he is laying waste. 9. He was freeing the slaves. 10. We were concealing the money.

[1] Also *I loved, I did love, I used to love.*

65. VOCABULARY.

clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shout, noise.
cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, consul.
corōna, -ae, *f.*, crown, garland.
nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name.
oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town.
soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister.
victor, -ōris, *m.*, conqueror, victor.
virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden, virgin.
vulnus, -eris, *n.*, wound.
ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, deck, adorn.
mittit, he sends.
mittunt, they send.
ē,[1] **ex** (*prep. with abl.*), from, out of.
ne, nōnne, num, } *signs of questions.*

66. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mīlitēs cōnsulis ex oppidō currunt. 2. Nōnne magister clāmōrem puerōrum culpat? 3. Victōrēs Rōmānōrum corōna ōrnābat. 4. Nōmen virginis erat Iūlia. 5. Cūstōdēsne obsidum culpābās? 6. Bonum rēgem et iūdicem laudābāmus. 7. Cēlābātis, puerī, librōs sorōris. 8. Obsidī aquam dabam. 9. Servī prīncipis agrōs parābant. 10. Num mīles vulnera cēlābat? 11. Cōnsul ex agrīs in oppidum mīlitēs multōs mittit. 12. Līberōs in Britanniam obsidēs mittunt. 13. Nōnne parātus eris victōrem ōrnāre? 14. Cōnsulī voluptātēs nōn multae sunt.

II. 1. A crown was adorning the head of the victor. 2. Do you praise the diligence of the pupils every day? 3. The soldiers are sending (their) children out of the town. 4. (My) sister's horse is black. 5. Galba runs into the field and calls the horse. 6. Was not the maiden's companion a Roman knight (*eques*)? 7. We were setting free the feet of the slaves. 8. There were many stones in the garden. 9. The Roman consul is laying waste the towns and fields. 10. The shouts of the pupils did not delight the master.

[1] **ē** is used before consonants, **ex** before vowels and consonants.

CHAPTER XIII.

Third Declension. — *Continued.*

First Conjugation, Future Indicative Active; Ablative of Instrument.

67. PARADIGM.

Future Indicative Active of Amō.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	**amābō**, *I shall love.*	**amābimus**, *we shall love.*
2.	**amābis**, *you will love.*	**amābitis**, *you will love.*
3.	**amābit**, *he will love.*	**amābunt**, *they will love.*

68. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Laudābit, laudābunt. 2. Ōrnābō, ōrnābimus. 3. Nārrāmus, nārrābāmus, nārrābimus. 4. Vāstat, vāstābat, vāstābit. 5. Cēlābās, cēlābis, cēlābunt. 6. Vocābit, ōrnābat, ōrnat. 7. Dabō, dabimus, dabunt. 8. Vocābitis, vocābātis, vocātis. 9. Dēlectat, dēlectābit, dēlectābat. 10. Ornāmus, ōrnābāmus, ōrnābant.

II. 1. I shall praise, we shall praise. 2. He is toiling, he was toiling, he will toil. 3. We shall conceal, he will conceal. 4. I shall set free, we shall set free, they will set free. 5. He will give, you will give, they will give. 6. We will call, it will delight, they will toil. 7. He is blaming, they were blaming, I shall blame. 8. He will prepare, they will prepare, you will prepare. 9. He will tell, I was telling, they will tell. 10. We were praising, he will call, you will tell.

69. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puella rosīs caput ōrnat,** *the girl adorns her head with roses.*
2. **Poēta fābulīs līberōs dēlectat,** *the poet delights his children with stories.*
3. **Lapide equitem vulnerat,** *he wounds the horseman with a stone.*

Observe that *rosīs*, *fābulīs*, and *lapide* are in the ablative case, and that they show the instrument or means employed in doing the act. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of instrument* or *means*.

70. Rule. — *Instrument or means is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

71. VOCABULARY.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree.
carmen, -inis, *n.*, song, poem.
Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Caesar.
Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul.
Homērus, -ī, *m.*, Homer.
homō, -inis, *m.*, man.
pater, patris, *m.*, father.
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek.
Graecī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Greeks.
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wound.
portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry.
ad (*prep. with acc.*), to, for, near.
ā,[1] **ab,** (*prep. with abl.*), from, by.

72. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Homērum, prīncipem Graecōrum poētārum, magistrī et dīscipulī laudābant. 2. Multī līberī prīncipum Galliae obsidēs erant Caesaris. 3. Arborēs multae et lātae rēgis hortum ōrnant. 4. Nōnne mīles pīlō equitem vulnerābit? 5. Bonī puerī columbam pulchram

[1] **ā** before consonants, **ab** before vowels.

lapide nōn vulnerābunt. 6. Virginēs patrem amant et laudant. 7. Carmina poētae multōs hominēs dēlectant. 8. Bonōs librōs amābis, nōn cēlābis. 9. Cūstōdibus pīla dabimus, obsidibus aquam. 10. Eques in capite vulnus habet. 11. Nūntius ab Helvētiīs ad Caesarem dōna portat. 12. Puer librum ad sorōrem mittit. 13. Amīcīs voluptātēs multās pecūniā parābat.

II. 1. Men love (their) children, and often praise (them). 2. The victors will bring grain from the fields. 3. The shouts of the soldiers will not wound the horsemen of Caesar. 4. The maiden has a crown of roses. 5. Bad men are not good companions, are they? 6. The horse's feet are in the water. 7. The names of the pupils are in the master's book. 8. You will give a book to (your) father, but a rose to (your) sister. 9. Will you set free the sister of the consul? 10. The boy is ready to carry a letter to (his) father.

CHAPTER XIV.

Third Declension: Stems in i.

First Conjugation, Perfect Indicative Active; Perfect Indicative of Sum; Ablative of Manner.

73. PARADIGMS.

	īgnis, *m.*, *fire.*	**hostis**, *m. and f.*, *enemy.*	**caedēs**, *f.*, *slaughter.*
Stem	**īgni-**	**hosti-**	**caedi-**

	SINGULAR.		
N., *V.*	īgnis	hostis	caedēs
G.	īgnis	hostis	caedis
D.	īgnī	hostī	caedī
Ac.	īgnem	hostem	caedem
Ab.	īgnī, -e	hoste	caede

	PLURAL.		
N., *V.*	īgnēs	hostēs	caedēs
G.	īgnium	hostium	caedium
D., *Ab.*	īgnibus	hostibus	caedibus
Ac.	īgnēs, -īs	hostēs, -īs	caedēs, -īs

1. Most nouns in *-is* are declined like **hostis**, some like **īgnis**; but a few have only *im* in the accusative singular, and only *ī* in the ablative singular.

2. Whenever any of these nouns are introduced in this book that are not declined like **hostis**, their peculiarities will be given.

3. Nouns in *-ēs*, not increasing in the genitive (that is, not having more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative) are declined like **caedēs**.

74. PARADIGMS.

Perfect Indicative Active of Amō.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1.	amāvī,	*I loved.* / *I have loved.*	amāvimus,	*we loved.* / *we have loved.*
2.	amāvistī,	*you loved.* / *you have loved.*	amāvistis,	*you loved.* / *you have loved.*
3.	amāvit,	*he loved.* / *he has loved.*	amāvērunt *or* amāvēre,	*they loved.* / *they have loved.*

Perfect Indicative of Sum.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1.	fuī,	*I was.* / *I have been.*	fuimus,	*we were.* / *we have been.*
2.	fuistī,	*you were.* / *you have been.*	fuistis,	*you were.* / *you have been.*
3.	fuit,	*he was.* / *he has been.*	fuērunt or fuēre,	*they were.* / *they have been.*

1. Notice that the perfect stem of amō is the present stem + *v*. It may be found in any verb by dropping the final *i* of the first person of the perfect indicative active.

2. Observe that the endings of the perfect are the same for both sum and amō. Make a table of them, and commit to memory.

75. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Portābit, portāvit, portāvērunt. 2. Parāvī, parāvimus, parāvērunt. 3. Vocāvistī, vocāvistis, vocābitis. 4. Laudāvī, laudāvit, laudāvērunt. 5. Laudās, laudābās, laudābis. 6. Līberāvit, dedit, cēlāvit. 7. Dedistī, dedistis, culpāvī. 8. Vulnerābis, vulnerābās, vulnerāvit. 9. Vulnerāvī, vulnerāvērunt, vulnerāvistis. 10. Vāstāvit, parāvit, convocāvit.

II. 1. I was carrying, you were calling, he will tell. 2. He has carried, you called, he concealed. 3. I have given, you gave, it delighted. 4. I shall lay waste, I shall call, we shall tell. 5. He was carrying, he will carry, he has carried. 6. He was concealing, he has concealed, they concealed. 7. He praised, he has blamed, they have called. 8. You were preparing, you will carry, you will call. 9. They adorn, will adorn, have adorned. 10. He will wound, was wounding, is wounding.

76. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Agricola frūmentum cum dīligentiā in oppidum portābat,** *the farmer was carrying grain into the town with diligence.*
2. **Agricola māgnā cum dīligentiā in oppidum frūmentum portābat,** *the farmer with great diligence was carrying grain into the town.*
3. **Agricola māgnā dīligentiā in oppidum frūmentum portābat,** *the farmer with great diligence was carrying grain into the town.*

Observe that in the sentences *cum dīligentiā*, *māgnā cum dīligentiā*, and *māgnā dīligentiā*, show the manner of the act. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of manner*.

77. RULE. — *Manner is expressed by the ablative with* ***cum,*** *or a limiting adjective, or with both.*

Manner may also, as in English, be expressed by an adverb.

78. VOCABULARY.

caedēs, -is, *f.*, slaughter, murder.
fīnis, -is, *m.*, end; *pl.*, territory.
gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword.
hostis, -is, *m. and f.*, enemy.
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.
māter, -tris, *f.*, mother.
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, toil, labor.
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, seize, take.
facit, he makes.
faciunt, they make.
libenter, *adv.*, gladly.
dē (*prep. with abl.*), about, of, from.
cum (*prep. with abl.*), with.

79. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mīles gladiō hostem vulnerāvit. 2. Helvētiī nūntiōs dē iniūriīs ad Caesarem mittunt. 3. Victor fīnem bellī libenter facit.[1] 4. Caesar īgne et gladiō fīnēs hosti-

[1] Makes gladly, *i.e.* is glad to make.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

um vāstāvit. 5. Agricolae māgnā cum dīligentiā laborāvērunt. 6. Nōnne dīligentiam dīscipulōrum libenter laudāvistī?[1] 7. Mīlitēs Caesaris māgnam hostium caedem faciunt. 8. Graecī carmina Homērī laudābant. 9. Multa Galliae oppida occupābimus. 10. Cōnsul dē Galliā fābulam nārrat. 11. Serva ad mātrem multa dōna portat ā dominā. 12. Clāmōribus māgnīs oppidum mīlitēs occupāvērunt.

II. 1. The boys run to the woods with a great shout. 2. Were the men of Britain large? 3. The maiden called her sister by name. 4. I have decked the head of my mother with a garland of roses. 5. The poems of Homer delighted the Greeks. 6. Mothers like to adorn[2] their children. 7. The trees in my father's garden are large. 8. You will wound your companion with your sword. 9. The wounds of the soldier were many. 10. The boy labors diligently[3] in the field every day.

CHAPTER XV.

Third Declension: Stems in i. — *Continued.*

First Conjugation, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active; Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative of Sum; Ablative of Accompaniment.

80. PARADIGMS.

	mare, *n.*, *sea.*	**animal**, *n.*, *animal.*
Stem	**mari-**	**animāli-**

[1] See 3 and note 1. [2] Compare 3 and 6, above. [3] *I.e.* with diligence.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., Ac., V.	mare	maria	animal	animālia
G.	maris	marium	animālis	animālium
D., Ab.	marī	maribus	animālī	animālibus

Observe that the above nouns have *i* stems, and that the nominative is the same as the stem, except that the characteristic *i* has either been changed to *e*, as in mare, or dropped, as in animal.

81. PARADIGMS.

Indicative Active of Amō.

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. amāv**eram**, *I had loved.*	amāv**erāmus**, *we had loved.*
2. amāv**erās**, *you had loved.*	amāv**erātis**, *you had loved.*
3. amāv**erat**, *he had loved.*	amāv**erant**, *they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. amāv**erō**, *I shall have loved.*	amāv**erimus**, *we shall have loved.*
2. amāv**eris**, *you will have loved.*	amāv**eritis**, *you will have loved.*
3. amāv**erit**, *he will have loved.*	amāv**erint**, *they will have loved.*

Indicative of Sum.

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. fu**eram**, *I had been.*	fu**erāmus**, *we had been.*
2. fu**erās**, *you had been.*	fu**erātis**, *you had been.*
3. fu**erat**, *he had been.*	fu**erant**, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. fu**erō**, *I shall have been.*	fu**erimus**, *we shall have been.*
2. fu**eris**, *you will have been.*	fu**eritis**, *you will have been.*
3. fu**erit**, *he will have been.*	fu**erint**, *they will have been.*

82. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 2. Cēlāvī, culpāvī, vocāvī, labōrāvī. 3. Vocāverat, vāstāverat, parāverat. 4. Portāverō, vāstāverō, occupāverō. 5. Cēlāverāsne? parāverāsne? ōrnāverāsne? 6. Cēlāvistīne pecūniam? 7. Līberāverat obsidēs. 8. Frūmentum parāverātis. 9. Sorōrem culpāverat. 10. Puerōs laudāverit. 11. Iūdex mīlitem līberāvit. 12. Gladium hostis occupāverat.

II. 1. They had wounded, he had prepared. 2. He will have loved, they will have blamed. 3. I labor, I was laboring, I will labor. 4. I have labored, I had labored, I shall have labored. 5. He calls, he was calling, he will call. 6. He has called, he had called, he will have called. 7. The soldier had carried a javelin. 8. We had called together the children. 9. The fire had seized the town. 10. The gift will have delighted the boy. 11. I will hurry to call Titus.

83. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Caesar in agrōs Titum cum equitibus mittit,** *Cæsar sends Titus with cavalry into the country-districts.*
2. **Galba cum patre in urbe labōrat,** *Galba works with his father in the city.*

Observe that *equitibus* denotes the persons by whom Titus is accompanied, and *patre* the person by whom Galba is accompanied. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of accompaniment.*

84. Rule. — *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with* **cum.**

In military phrases *cum* is often omitted; as, **Caesar multīs legiōnibus in Galliam properat,** *Cæsar hastens into Gaul with many legions.*

85. VOCABULARY.

animal, -ālis, *n.*, animal.
Bibracte, -is, *n.*, Bibracte.
flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river.
iter, itineris, *n.*, march, route.
legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion.
mare, -is, *n.*, sea.
vectīgal, -gālis, *n.*, tax.
tertius, -a, -um, third.
pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight.
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hurry.

86. EXERCISES.

I. 1. In marī sunt animālia multa et māgna. 2. Dederantne Helvētiī Caesarī vectīgālia? 3. Caesar cum tertiā legiōne ad oppidum Bibracte properāvit. 4. Hostēs māgnīs itineribus ā silvīs ad flūmen properāvērunt. 5. Gladiō et pīlō, mīlitēs, cum Graecīs pūgnāvistis. 6. In carminibus Homērus fābulās dē bellō nārrāvit. 7. Līberī cum mātre in pulchrō hortō fuerant. 8. Pulchrae arborēs multōs hominēs dēlectant. 9. Cōnsul cum multīs mīlitibus īgnī et gladiō fīnēs hostium vāstāverat. 10. Māgna fuerit caedēs hostium.

II. 1. The poet had carried his poems to (his) sister. 2. Cæsar makes a long march and takes the town Bibracte. 3. The soldiers had fought with the enemy, and had wounded many with (their) swords. 4. The boys were glad to labor (were gladly laboring) with (their) fathers in the fields. 5. The march to the river had been long. 6. The taxes of the Greeks will be small. 7. Have sailors always been glad to tell stories about the sea? 8. The legions hasten to the river with the cavalry, and put an end to the slaughter (make an end of the slaughter). 9. The soldiers fought in the river. 10. Cæsar will have laid waste the fields of the enemy with fire.

CHAPTER XVI.

Third Declension: Mixed Stems.[1]

Ablative of Time.

87. PARADIGMS.

	nox, *f.*, *night.*	**urbs**, *f.*, *city.*	**mōns**, *m.*, *mountain.*
Stem	**noct-**	**urb-**	**mont-**
	SINGULAR.		
N., V.	nox	urbs	mōns
G.	noctis	urbis	montis
D.	noctī	urbī	montī
Ac.	noctem	urbem	montem
Ab.	nocte	urbe	monte
	PLURAL.		
N., V.	noctēs	urbēs	montēs
G.	noctium	urbium	montium
D., Ab.	noctibus	urbibus	montibus
Ac.	noctēs -īs	urbēs -īs	montēs -īs

Which class of nouns do these resemble in the singular? In the plural?

Like these words are declined: 1. Most nouns in *-ns* and *-rs*; 2. Monosyllables in *-s* and *-x* preceded by a consonant.

---

[1] These were originally consonant stems, as given above, but in the plural they are declined like *i* stems.

88. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Vocābam, cēlābō, parāvī. 2. Portābis, dederās, occupāveris. 3. Properāsne ad flūmen? 4. Occupātisne, occupābātisne oppidum? 5. Pūgnābantne, laudābunturne? 6. Hominēs līberāvimus, laudābimus. 7. Virgō rosīs sorōrem ōrnābat, ōrnāverat. 8. Ubi mīles pīlum cēlābit, cēlābat? 9. Quid puer ad mātrem portāverit, portāvit? 10. Cum Gallīs pūgnāverit, pūgnāverat.

II. 1. We were calling, we shall hurry. 2. Why were you calling? 3. Did not the master blame the slaves? 4. He fought with a sword, will fight. 5. We shall fight with the Greeks, he will fight. 6. He loved (his) brothers, had loved. 7. He will have praised the poem, you were praising. 8. Fine trees adorn, were adorning, the garden. 9. The Greeks had paid, were paying, tribute. 10. We will call, have called, a council.

89. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Hieme in urbe Mārcus labōrat,** *in the winter Marcus works in the city.*
2. **Legiō nocte oppidum occupāvit,** *the legion seized the town in the night.*
3. **Ūnā hōrā in urbe erō,** *within an hour I shall be in the city.*

Observe that *hieme* shows the time *when* Marcus works in the city, *nocte* the time *when* the town was seized, and *ūnā hōrā* the time *within which* I shall reach the city.

90. RULE. — *Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Time within which may also be expressed by **in** with the ablative.

91. VOCABULARY.

aestās, -ātis, *f.*, summer.
annus, -ī, *m.*, year.
dux, ducis, *m.*, leader.
hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter.
hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.
mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain.
nox, noctis, *f.*, night.
pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.
urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.
vigilia, -ae, *f.*, (part of the night) watch.

92. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dux per silvās ad flūmen properāverat et cum hostibus pūgnāverat. 2. Tertiā vigiliā noctis Bibracte occupābāmus. 3. Māter Galbae erit in urbe hieme, nōn aestāte. 4. Dē tertiā vigiliā legiōnēs ex oppidō properāvērunt. 5. Num animālia īgnem amant? 6. Flūmina in mare currunt. 7. Tertiā hōrā Caesar māgnam caedem hostium facit. 8. Tertiō annō bellī cōnsulibus vectīgālia dederātis. 9. In pācis temporibus agricolae sunt laetī. 10. Erant multae arborēs in montibus. 11. Mīlitēs tertiae legiōnis gladiīs et pīlīs pūgnābant.

II. 1. The leader of the soldiers makes peace with the Helvetians. 2. The farmers labored cheerfully in the summer. 3. The wearied soldiers had hastened by forced marches into the territory of the enemy, and had taken the town in the third watch of the night. 4. Winter on the mountain had not been agreeable. 5. We had fought at night with the Roman legions. 6. The faithful mother has called her tired children into the garden. 7. The men hastened to the sea in the third watch. 8. Man is an animal. 9. Galba did not seize the beautiful town, but laid waste the fields of the enemy. 10. The soldiers are laying waste the fields with fire.

CHAPTER XVII.

Third Declension.

Rules for Gender.

Make a complete table of the nominative endings of nouns of the third declension.

93. Gender. 1. Nouns in *-ō, -or, -ōs, -er,* and *-ĕs,* increasing in the genitive, are masculine, except those in *-dō, -gō,* and abstract and collective nouns in *-iō.*

2. Nouns in *-ās, -ēs,* not increasing in the genitive, *-is, -ūs* (long), *-dō, -gō, -iō* (abstract and collective), *-s* (following a consonant), *-x,* are feminine.

3. Nouns in *-a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -us* (short), are neuter.

There are many exceptions to these rules, and the learner should notice each when he first meets it.

These rules are subordinate to the general rule for gender. See **7**.

94. VOCABULARY.

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, scout.
lītus, -oris, *n.*, shore (of the sea).
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom; *pl.*, manners, character.
ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, rank, row, order.
palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp.
pedes, peditis, *m.* (**pēs,** foot), foot-soldier.
dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, consider, deliberate.
per (*prep. with acc.*), through.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Līberōs et mātrēs in palūde cēlāverant. 2. Caesar cum hostium duce dē pāce dēlīberābat. 3. Hieme mīlitēs Caesaris saepe pūgnābant. 4. Mīlitēs tertiae legiōnis ad lītus properāverant. 5. Nūntiī per hostium fīnēs in urbem currunt. 6. Dux dē tertiā vigiliā noctis ad montem explōrātōrēs mittit. 7. Magister dīscipulīs dē mōribus Graecōrum nārrābat. 8. Explōrātor dē tertiā vigiliā per ōrdinēs peditum ad flūmen properāvit. 9. Peditēs tertiā hōrā montem occupāverant. 10. Nocte in monte multōs īgnēs habent mīlitēs.

II. 1. The commander will consult with the consul about the war. 2. The boys run through the woods to the shore. 3. He often hurries into the city about nine o'clock.[1] 4. We will send scouts in the night to the territory of the enemy. 5. The third legion had often fought with the Helvetians in the summer. 6. In the third year of the war we laid waste many towns and cities. 7. They had carried grain into the marshes to (their) wives. 8. The taxes of the Helvetians were small. 9. The mother frequently praises the good manners of (her) children. 10. The commander censures a foot-soldier of the third line.

96. VOCABULARY.

cohors, -tis, *f.*, a cohort.
iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, law.
pars, partis, *f.*, part.
tempus, -oris, *n.*, time.
decem, *numeral adj., indecl.*, ten.
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, assist.
stō, stāre, stetī, stātum, stand.

[1] As the Romans divided the day into twelve hours, beginning at sunrise, *about nine o'clock* would be equivalent to *about the third hour*.

97. EXERCISES.

III. 1. Caesar ā lītore ad urbem iter facit et mīlitēs frūmentō iuvat. 2. Sunt in legiōne decem cohortēs. 3. Puer in itinere comitem iūverat. 4. Servus per palūdem ad mare currit. 5. Arborum ōrdō in lītore stābat. 6. In pācis temporibus bellum parāmus. 7. Dē iūre obsidum in conciliō dēlīberābimus. 8. Pater fīliō librum dē Graecōrum mōribus dedit. 9. Cōnsul cum parte peditum Britanniam occupābit. 10. Dux cum decem cohortibus Graecōs iuvābat.

IV. 1. The scout was telling about the customs of the Helvetians. 2. The horses were standing at (in) the end of a marsh. 3. In the third watch the commander sends a scout to the mountain. 4. Boys, do you like to stand on the seashore in summer? 5. Night puts an end to the journey. 6. Caesar had aided the Helvetians with grain. 7. In the third year of the war the Greeks make peace with the Romans. 8. They will consult about the rights of the victors. 9. At the seashore, winter is not a pleasant season (time of year), is it? 10. We shall set free a part of the hostages at nine o'clock.[1]

---

[1] See **95.** II. 3.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Adjectives of Three Terminations.

First Conjugation, Present Indicative Passive; Ablative of Agent.

98. PARADIGMS.

	ācer, *sharp.*			**celer**, *swift.*		
	Stem **ācri-**			**celeri-**		
	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N., V.	ācer	ācris	ācre	celer	celeris	celere
G.		ācris			celeris	
D., Ab.		ācrī			celerī	
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	celerem	celerem	celere
	PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
N., V.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
G.		ācrium			celerium	
D., Ab.		ācribus			celeribus	
Ac.	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria	celerēs (-īs)	celerēs (-īs)	celeria

1. These are called adjectives of three terminations, because in the nominative singular there is a different form for each gender.[1]

2. What change in the stem is seen in the nominative?

3. Decline together mīles ācer, domina ācris, celer equus.

99. Learn the conjugation of the present indicative passive of amō (p. 205). Make a table of terminations,

[1] To this class belong only a few stems in *-ri*. These are all (except celer) declined like ācer.

and commit them to memory. Like **amō** conjugate the present indicative passive of **vocō, laudō, dēlectō,** and **vulnerō.**

100. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Vocāmur, culpāmur. 2. Vulnerātur ā mīlite. 3. Vulnerātur pīlō. 4. Līberat servum. 5. Iuvantur ā patre. 6. Cīvēs ā cōnsule convocantur. 7. Ā sorōre laudātur. 8. Palūs arboribus cēlātur. 9. Frūmentum ex agrō ab agricolā portātur. 10. Saepe ā puerīs in hortum vocāris.

II. 1. We are blamed, you are praised. 2. The mother adorns (her) daughter. 3. The girls are adorned by the mother. 4. The town is seized by the general. 5. The soldiers are wounded with stones. 6. The children are carried through the marsh. 7. The men are blamed by the judge. 8. We are assisted by (our) friends. 9. The fields are devastated by the conquerors. 10. The town is laid waste by fire.

101. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Rēgīna Iūliam amat,** *the queen loves Julia.*
2. **Iūlia ā rēgīnā amātur,** *Julia is loved by the queen.*
3. **Titus ab amīcō amātur,** *Titus is loved by his friend.*

Observe that the first and second sentences have the same meaning, but that the verb of the first is in the active voice, and the verb of the second in the passive.

Observe that the agent — that is, the person who does the act — is expressed in the first by the nominative case, and in the second by the ablative with *ā*, and in the third by the ablative with *ab*.

102. RULE. — *The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with* ***ā*** *or* ***ab.***

103. VOCABULARY.

celeritās, -ātis, *f.*, quickness, rapidity, swiftness.

cīvis, -is, *m.* (*like* **īgnis**), citizen.

imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, commander-in-chief, general.

frāter, frātris, *m.*, brother.

lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, lieutenant, ambassador.

nāvis, -is, *f.* (*like* **īgnis**), ship.

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, active.

celer, celeris, celere, quick, swift.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, accuse.

104. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ācer cōnsul malōs cīvēs accūsat. 2. Lēgātus māgnā celeritāte in fīnēs hostium iter facit et oppidum māgnum occupat. 3. Frāter imperātōris ā cīvibus accūsātur. 4. Mātrēs līberōs rosīs pulchrīs ōrnant. 5. Urbs tertiā vigiliā noctis ā duce cohortium occupātur. 6. Nautae in decem nāvibus celeribus frūmenta ad urbem portant. 7. Mīlitēs, ab imperātore laudāmur. 8. Lēgātus cum imperātōre dē iūre peditum dēlīberāverat. 9. Vir ā comite gladiō vulnerātur. 10. Celerī nāvī ab imperātōris frātre in Britanniam portātur epistula.

II. 1. A beautiful book is given to the pupil by the master. 2. A great part of the city is concealed by the mountain. 3. The lieutenants are summoned to a council by the commander-in-chief. 4. In the summer of the third year of the war, the general consulted with the citizens about peace. 5. Many large animals were standing on the shore of the sea. 6. The active foot-soldiers by forced marches hurry to the consul. 7. Swift ships are given to Caesar by (his) friends. 8. In time of war women often assisted the farmers in the fields. 9. The boys were standing in a row at the end of the marsh. 10. Soldiers, we will quickly (with quickness) prepare to fight.

CHAPTER XIX.

Adjectives of Two Terminations.[1]

First Conjugation, Imperfect Indicative Passive; Ablative of Cause.

105. PARADIGM.

brevis, *short.* Stem **brevi-**

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N., V.	brevis		breve	brevēs		brevia
G.	brevis			brevium		
D., Ab.	brevī			brevibus		
Ac.	brevem		breve	brevēs (-īs)		brevia

106. Learn the conjugation of the imperfect indicative passive of amō. Make a table of terminations, and commit them to memory.

107. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Pater fīlium iuvābat. 2. Fīlius ā patre iuvābātur. 3. Prīnceps obsidēs līberāverat. 4. Ā Rōmānīs urbs vāstābātur. 5. Accūsābāris ā cīvibus. 6. Gladiīs ab hostibus (*it*) pūgnātur. 7. Lēgātī ab imperātōre accūsābantur. 8. Cēlābāmur in silvā ā duce. 9. Māter puerīs fābulās brevēs nārrābat. 10. Fābulae brevēs ā mātre nārrābantur.

---

[1] This class includes all *i* stems, except those of three terminations, and also the comparatives.

II. 1. I was calling, thou wast called. 2. We were praising, you were praised. 3. You were blamed, he was praised. 4. We were being assisted by (our) friends. 5. We were preparing war. 6. I was assisted by (my) brother. 7. The sailors were hurrying to the sea with shouts. 8. The women and children were concealed in the swamps. 9. A part of the cohorts was concealed by a row of trees. 10. In the night the city was seized.

108. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCE.

1. **Servī dīligentiā ā dominō laudantur,** *the slaves are praised by their master for (because of) their diligence.*
2. **Mīlitēs dēfessī itinere erant,** *the soldiers were weary with (on account of) their march.*

Observe that *dīligentiā* shows the cause of the praising, and *itinere* the cause of the weariness, and that they are in the ablative case.

109. RULE. — *Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.*

110. VOCABULARY.

castra, -ōrum, *n.*, camp.
multitūdō, -inis, *f.*, (**multus**), multitude, great number.
populus, -ī, *m.*, people.
virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*, (**vir**), bravery, virtue.
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, surpass, defeat.
brevis, -e, short.
fortis, -e, brave.
gravis, -e, heavy.
omnis, -e, all.
dolet, *he is pained;* **dolent,** *they are pained.*

111. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Peditēs omnēs virtūte ab imperātōre laudābantur. 2. Mīlitēs tertiae legiōnis vulneribus multīs dolent.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

3. Multitūdō peditum fortium māgnā cum celeritāte hostēs superābat. 4. Lapidēs gravēs ad urbem nāvibus portābantur. 5. Cīvēs ad castra properābant et cum imperātōre dē iūre dēlīberābant. 6. Imperātor mōre populī Rōmānī Helvētiōs iter nōn dat. 7. Brevī tempore Caesar Helvētiīs superāverat. 8. Dux iniūriīs Graecōrum ā populō Rōmānō accūsābātur. 9. Gravī vulnere ad castra ā servō lēgātus portātur. 10. Nautae ācres erant laetī celeribus nāvibus.

II. 1. The messenger was praised by the citizens for his quickness. 2. The cohorts were aided by a large number of brave cavalrymen. 3. The journey from a part of Gaul to Britain is short. 4. The lieutenant with all the cohorts hastened to the camp in the night. 5. Has a legion ten cohorts? 6. Water was carried by the women to the weary soldiers. 7. The judge is grieved by the wrongs of (his) brother. 8. A part of the third legion had defeated the Helvetians at the river. 9. The soldiers were standing in the camp. 10. The camp of the enemy was seized through the valor of the third cohort.

CHAPTER XX.

Adjectives of One Termination.[1]

First Conjugation, Future Indicative Passive; Ablative of Specification.

112. PARADIGMS.

	vēlōx, *swift.* Stem **vēlōc-**			**potēns**, *powerful.* **potent-**		
	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N., V.	vēlōx			potēns		
G.	vēlōc**is**			potent**is**		
D.	vēlōcī			potentī		
Ac.	vēlōc**em**		vēlōx	potent**em**		potēns
Ab.	vēlōc**ī** (-e)			potentī (-e)		
	PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
N., V.	vēlōcēs		vēlōc**ia**	potentēs		potent**ia**
G.	vēlōc**ium**			potent**ium**		
D., Ab.	vēlōc**ibus**			potent**ibus**		
Ac.	vēlōcēs (-īs)		vēlōcia	potentēs (-īs)		potentia

1. What nouns do these adjectives resemble in their declension?

2. Why are they called adjectives of one termination?

3. Decline together eques vēlōx, vēlōx equus, rēx potēns, rēgīna potēns.

113. Learn the conjugation of the future indicative passive of amō. Make a table of terminations, and commit them to memory.

---

[1] This class includes all consonant stems except the comparatives.

114. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Castra occupābantur, occupābuntur. 2. Vulnerābātis, vulnerābitis pīlō. 3. Celeritās explōrātōrem iuvat, iuvābit. 4. Explōrātor celeritāte laudābātur, laudābitur. 5. Ab amīcīs iuvāmur, iuvābimur. 6. Celerēs nāvēs parantur, parābuntur, parābantur. 7. Cum celeritāte urbs occupābātur, occupābitur. 8. Accūsābitur, accusābātur ab ācrī lēgātō. 9. Virtūs fortium virōrum saepe laudātur. 10. Celer nūntius nōn culpābātur, culpābitur. 11. Superābāmur, superābimur ā Rōmānīs.

II. 1. We shall assist, you will be assisted. 2. The citizen will be assisted by (his) brother. 3. The city was being seized, it will be seized by the general. 4. Soldiers, you will be praised for (your) valor. 5. In the summer we hurry, we shall hurry to the shore. 6. We were fighting, we shall fight with swords. 7. He is fighting, he was fighting with a foot-soldier. 8. You will be called to the city. 9. The citizens were being concealed, they will be concealed in the woods. 10. Where will the scout be concealed?

115. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Rōmānī Helvētiōs virtūte superābant**, *the Romans surpassed the Helvetians in valor.*
2. **Nōmine fuit rēx**, *he was king in name.*

Observe that *virtūte* is used with *superābant* and defines its application; so also *nōmine* defines the application of *rēx*. The ablative thus used answers the question *in what respect*, and is called the *ablative of specification.*

116. RULE. — *The ablative of specification may be used with a verb, noun, or adjective to define its application.*

117. VOCABULARY.

ars, artis, *f.*, art.
hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*, culture.
nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, character.
vīs, vīs, vī, vim, vī, *f.*, force; *pl.* **vīrēs, vīrium,** strength.
altus, -a, -um, high, deep.
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, proper.
pār, paris, equal.
potēns, -entis, powerful.
vēlōx, -ōcis, swift.
que, *conj.*, *enclitic*, and.

118. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Helvētiī ā populō Rōmānō virtūte hūmānitāteque superābantur. 2. Brevī tempore mīlitēs ācrēs oppidum nōmine Bibracte occupant. 3. Imperātor et lēgātus sunt vīribus parēs. 4. Equī ducum vīribus celeritāteque fuērunt parēs. 5. Frāter artē, bonīs mōribus soror laudābitur. 6. Mīles ā frātre hūmānitāte, nōn virtūte superābātur. 7. Iūdex ā cīvibus multīs et potentibus accūsābitur. 8. Caesar multitūdine vēlōcium nāvium rēgem iuvābit. 9. Artem ducis, mīlitum virtūtem saepe laudāmus. 10. Lītus est altum et aestāte ad castra nātūrā idōneum.

II. 1. The Romans were surpassed by the enemy in the large number of (their) men. 2. The mountain was not suitable by nature for a large town. 3. The brother of the active lieutenant was commander-in-chief in name. 4. The brave brothers are suffering on account of (their) wounds. 5. All the lieutenants will be summoned to a council in the first watch of the night. 6. The swift cavalry will hurry from the camp at the proper time. 7. The third legion will be praised for (its) swiftness and (its) valor. 8. The Greeks were surpassed by the Romans in the arts of war. 9. The valor and culture of the Greeks will be praised by all men. 10. The Romans were superior to (their) enemies in the quickness of their ships.

CHAPTER XXI.

First Conjugation.

Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive; Descriptive Ablative.

119. Learn the conjugation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of **amō**.

1. These tenses are formed by combining forms of the verb **sum** with the perfect passive participle **amātus, -a, -um.** They are, therefore, called *compound tenses.*

2. It will be observed that the neuter of the participle **amātus, -a, -um,** is exactly like the supine given as one of the principal parts of the verb.

3. The participle **amātus, -a, -um,** is declined like **bonus, -a, -um,** and agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case.

Like **amō** conjugate the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of **laudō, vocō, vulnerō,** and **līberō.**

120. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Servī līberātī sunt, līberātī erunt. 2. Cūstōs vulnerātus erat, vulnerātus est. 3. Cīvēs convocātī erunt, convocātī erant. 4. Castra rēgis vāstāta erant. 5. Virtūte ā populō laudātus es. 6. Nocte in silvā cēlātī sumus. 7. Dēlectāmur, dēlectābiminī urbe. 8. Celeritāte et vīribus nōn superābātur. 9. Rēgis patria īgnī vāstāta est. 10. Ā potentibus cīvibus rēx accūsātus erat. 11. Vēlōx equus nūntiō parātus est.

II. 1. He is called, he was blamed, he will be praised. 2. He was called, he had been blamed, he will have been praised. 3. Titus was consul in name. 4. The commander-in-chief has been overcome. 5. The active horseman had been wounded. 6. We shall surpass the Greeks in culture. 7. The girls had been delighted with the poem. 8. Gaul had been seized by the enemy. 9. The javelins have been carried to the town. 10. Did you carry the javelins to the town? 11. We had been defeated in Britain. 12. He was not surpassed in strength. 13. The town has been taken by the lieutenant. 14. They were set free by the general. 15. The field had been laid waste with fire. 16. They have consulted with the chief.

121. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Iūlia est puella māgnā dīligentiā,** *Julia is a girl of great diligence.*
2. **Caesar erat māgnā virtūte,** *Caesar was a (man) of great valor.*
3. **Puerōs bonīs mōribus amō,** *I love boys of good character.*

Observe that *māgnā dīligentiā* modifies *puella*, that *māgnā virtūte* modifies *Caesar*, and that *bonīs mōribus* modifies *puerōs*. Observe, also, that these ablatives express a quality of the substantives which they modify. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of quality*, or the *descriptive ablative*.

The ablative alone cannot be used to express quality, but must have an adjective in agreement with it, or a limiting genitive.

122. Rule. — *The ablative with an adjective may be used to express quality.*

123. VOCABULARY.

adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*, youth.
Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus.
Germānus, -a, -um, German.
Germānus, -ī, *m.*, a German.
corpus, -oris, *n.*, body.
māgnitūdō, -inis, *f.*, size, magnitude.
oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, attack, storm.
inerēdibilis, incredible.
ingēns, -entis, huge, vast.
mūnītus, -a, -um, (*perf. part. of* **mūniō**), fortified.
prīmus, -a, -um, (*sup. of* **prior**), first.
summus, -a, -um, (*sup. of* **superus**), very high, very great, top of.

124. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Germānī prīmā vigiliā castra nātūrā et arte mūnīta oppūgnāvērunt. 2. Germānī erant ingentī māgnitūdine corporum et incrēdibilī virtūte. 3. Equitum multitūdine et celeritāte hostēs ā Rōmānīs superātī sunt. 4. Adulēscentem summā hūmānitāte lēgātum in Britanniam mittit. 5. Oppidum summā vī oppūgnātum est prīmā vigiliā. 6. Dux fortis incrēdibilī celeritāte ad montem properāverat et castra tertiae legiōnis oppūgnāverat. 7. Urbs potēns bellō fuerat. 8. Corōna gravis data erat rēgīnae. 9. Puella māgnā dīligentiā ā patre saepe laudāta est. 10. Imperātor idōneō tempore oppidum nātūrā mūnītum oppūgnābit.

II. 1. All men have been pleased by the skill of the great poet Homer. 2. The general, (a man) of great kindness, is pained by the wounds of his soldiers. 3. The poet was a man of great diligence and culture. 4. Men of great valor have been called into camp. 5. The Romans were surpassed by the Germans in stature (size of bodies). 6. The scouts hastened with incredible swiftness to a high mountain. 7. In a short time all the

citizens will have been called into the city. 8. The leaders of the cohorts are equal in stature and bravery. 9. The soldiers of Ariovistus, king of the Germans, wounded the cavalry of Cæsar with stones. 10. Suitable gifts have been given to all the good servants.

CHAPTER XXII.

Comparison of Adjectives.

Declension of Comparatives; Ablative with Comparatives.

125. Adjectives have in Latin as in English three degrees of comparison, — the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

Comparison may be regular or irregular.

126. REGULAR COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cārus (stem cāro-), *dear.*	cār**ior**, *dearer.*	cār**issimus**, *dearest.*
brevis (stem brevi-), *short.*	brev**ior**, *shorter.*	brev**issimus**, *shortest.*
vēlōx (stem vēlōc-), *swift.*	vēlōc**ior**, *swifter.*	vēlōc**issimus**, *swiftest.*
potēns (stem potent-), *powerful.*	potent**ior**, *more powerful.*	potent**issimus**, *most powerful.*

Observe that the comparative is formed from the stem of the positive by dropping the stem-vowel, if there is

one, and adding *-ior*, and the superlative likewise by adding *-issimus*.[1]

Compare **altus, longus, lātus, laetus, grātus, perītus, fortis, gravis.**

Declension of Comparatives.

127. PARADIGM.

cārior, *dearer.* Stem **cārior.**

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N., V.	cārior		cārius	cāriōrēs		cāriōra
G.	cāriōris			cāriōrum		
D	cāriōrī			cāriōribus		
Ac.	cāriōrem		cārius	cāriōrēs (-īs)		cāriōra
Ab.	cāriōre *or* -ī			cāriōribus		

1. All comparatives are declined like **cārior.**
2. All superlatives are declined like **bonus.**
3. The comparative must sometimes be translated by *too* or *rather*, and the superlative by *very.*

Bellum est longius, *the war is rather long.*
Bellum est longissimum, *the war is very long.*

128. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Rēx est potentior quam cōnsul,** *a king is more powerful than a consul.*
2. **Rēx est potentior cōnsule,** *a king is more powerful than a consul.*

In what case is *cōnsul?* Why?

---

[1] Some adjectives are not compared by adding terminations, but by using **magis,** *more,* and **māximē,** *most;* as, **idōneus,** *suitable;* **magis idōneus,** *more suitable;* **māximē idōneus,** *most suitable.*

Observe that the sentences have the same meaning, and that the ablative *cōnsule* is used instead of *quam cōnsul*.

129. RULE. — *The comparative is followed by the ablative when* ***quam*** *(than) is omitted.*

This ablative can only be used instead of a nominative or accusative.

130. VOCABULARY.

altitūdō, -ĭnis, *f.* (*altus*), height, depth.
animus, -ī, *m.*, mind, spirit.
Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Orgetorix.
nōbilis, -e, of high birth, famous, noble.
circumdō, -ăre, -dedī, -dătum, (**circum,** around, *and* **dō**), to put around, surround.
perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, throw into confusion, disturb greatly.
apud (*prep. with acc.*), among, with.
āc (*before consonants*), **atque** (*before vowels and consonants*), and.
quam, *adv.*, than.

131. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Rēgēs semper fuērunt potentiōrēs cīvibus, 2. Iter ad altum montem est brevissimum. 3. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx. 4. Imperātor fortior erat mīlite. 5. Flūmen est māgnā altitūdine et ad māgnās nāvēs idōneum. 6. Oppidum nātūrā mūnītum flūmine māgnā altitūdine circumdatum est. 7. Ariovistus et comes fuērunt parī māgnitūdine corporum. 8. Adulēscentēs animō perturbātī sunt ingentī māgnitūdine corporum et māgnā virtūte Germānōrum. 9. Pācis artēs grātiōrēs sunt bellī artibus. 10. Imperātor fuit summā virtūte ac hūmānitāte.

II. 1. Peace is more pleasant than war. 2. Seas are deeper and wider than rivers. 3. The Romans, by the

shortest route, and with incredible rapidity, had hurried to the city and had surrounded it with soldiers. 4. Among the Germans, Ariovistus was the bravest and most powerful. 5. The violence (*vīs*) of the enemy greatly disturbs the minds of the women and children. 6. The javelin of the Roman soldier was longer than his sword. 7. The lieutenant makes a very long journey in a severe (sharp) winter. 8. The cavalry are very swift and very brave. 9. The town was attacked by a youth of great valor. 10. The river is rather deep.

CHAPTER XXIII.

Comparison of Adjectives. — *Continued.*

Partitive Genitive.

132. Adjectives in *-er.*

	POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
1.	miser (stem misero-), *wretched.*	miser**ior, -ius,** *more wretched.*	miser**rimus, -a, -um,** *most wretched.*
2.	celer (stem celeri-), *quick.*	celer**ior, -ius,** *quicker.*	celer**rimus, -a, -um,** *quickest.*

Observe that the comparative of adjectives in *-er* is formed regularly, but that the superlative is formed by adding to the nominative singular masculine of the positive, *-rimus, -a, -um.*

Compare miser, ācer, pulcher.

133. Six adjectives in *-lis* form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the stem minus the stem-vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, *easy.*	facil**ior.**	facil**limus.**
difficilis, *difficult.*	difficil**ior.**	difficil**limus.**
similis, *like.*	simil**ior.**	simil**limus.**
dissimilis, *unlike.*	dissimil**ior.**	dissimil**limus.**
gracilis, *slender.*	gracil**ior.**	gracil**limus.**
humilis, *low.*	humil**ior.**	humil**limus.**

134. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Equitum fortissimī in Galliam properābunt,** *the bravest of the cavalry will hurry into Gaul.*
2. **Decem obsidum līberātī sunt,** *ten of the hostages were set free.*
3. **Multī mīlitum vulnerātī erant,** *many of the soldiers had been wounded.*

Observe that each word limited by the genitive in the examples denotes a part of the whole denoted by the genitive.

135. RULE. — *The partitive genitive denotes the whole of which a part is taken.*

136. VOCABULARY.

locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.* **loca**, -**ōrum**, *n.*), place.
mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall.
nihil, *n.*, *indeclinable*, nothing.
facilis, -e, easy.
difficilis, -e, difficult.
similis, -e, like, similar.
dissimilis, -e, unlike.

137. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Carmina Homērī pulcherrima sunt omnium Graecōrum carminum. 2. Aestāte in Britanniā nox est brevissima. 3. Mōrēs frātris et sorōris sunt dissimillimī.

4. Puerī liber est facillimus, virī difficillimus. 5. Nihil est grātius quam multitūdō amīcōrum. 6. Frātrēs et sorōrēs sunt mōribus simillimī. 7. Dux Rōmānōrum, nōbilis adulēscēns, summā (*depth of*) hieme oppidum Germānōrum oppūgnāvit. 8. Pars peditum in altissimō mūrō stat et in hostēs pīla āc lapidēs mittit. 9. Brevissimō tempore lēgātus locum altissimō mūrō circumdat. 10. Germānīs fuit nihil hūmānitātis. 11. Adulēscentem ingentī corporis māgnitūdine et summā virtūte ad Caesarem mittit.

II. 1. Many books are very easy, many very difficult. 2. Among the Romans the most powerful were not always men of the noblest birth. 3. The horses of Britain are very swift. 4. The farmer's black horse is swifter than the white (one). 5. Ariovistus was wounded in the foot. 6. Around the consul there were always young men of great culture and good character. 7. They attack on (*ex*) all sides with loud (great) shouts and throw the ranks into confusion. 8. A part of the soldiers of Orgetorix were attacked in a place very strongly fortified by nature. 9. A wall of great height was put around the place with incredible quickness. 10. In a very short time they will be attacked with incredible violence.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Irregular Comparison. — *Continued.*

Ablative of Difference.

138. Four adjectives with regular comparatives have two irregular superlatives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
exterus, *outward.*	exter**ior**, *outer* or *more outward.*	extrēmus *and* extimus, *outermost* or *last.*
īnferus, *low.*	īnfer**ior**, *lower.*	īnfimus *and* īmus, *lowest.*
posterus, *following.*	poster**ior**, *later.*	postrēmus *and* postumus, *last.*
superus, *upper.*	super**ior**, *higher.*	suprēmus *and* summus, *top of, highest.*

These adjectives are used mainly in the comparative and superlative.

139. The following are irregular throughout: —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, *good.*	melior, melius, *better.*	optimus, *best.*
malus, *bad.*	pēior, pēius, *worse.*	pessimus, *worst.*
māgnus, *great.*	māior, māius, *greater.*	māximus, *greatest.*
multus, *much.*	——, plūs,[1] *more.*	plūrimus, *most.*
multī, *many.*	plūrēs, plūra, *more.*	plūrimī, *most.*
parvus, *small.*	minor, minus, *smaller.*	minimus, *smallest.*
senex, *old.*	senior (māior nātū), *older, elder.*	māximus nātū, *oldest, eldest.*
iuvenis, *young.*	iūnior (minor nātū), *younger.*	minimus nātū, *youngest.*

[1] The neuter **plūs**, nom. and acc., and the gen. **plūris**, are the only forms used in the singular.

140. Some comparatives and superlatives have no positive, but are apparently formed from adverbs or prepositions.

	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
prae, prō (prep., *before*).	prior, *former*.	prīmus, *first*.
prope (adv., *near*).	propior, *nearer*.	proximus, *nearest*.

141. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Pater capite māior est quam fīlius,** *the father is a head taller* (*larger by a head*) *than the son.*
2. **Titus decem annīs senior est quam frāter,** *Titus is ten years older* (*older by ten years*) *than his brother.*
3. **Arbor decem pedibus altior est quam mūrus,** *the tree is ten feet higher* (*higher by ten feet*) *than the wall.*

An ablative like *capite*, *annīs*, or *pedibus*, with comparatives and words of comparison, showing how much one thing differs from another, is called an *ablative of difference.*

142. RULE. — *The degree of difference is denoted by the ablative.*

143. VOCABULARY.

Allobrogēs, -um, *m.*, the Allobroges.
Genāva, -ae, *f.*, Geneva.
Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Labienus.
lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light.
nātū, *m.* (*abl. of* **nātus**), in age.
māior nātū (greater in age), older.
iuvenis, -e, young; *as a noun*, a young man.
superus, -a, -um, upper.
exterus, -a, -um, outward, outer.
extrēmus, -a, -um, furthest, extreme.
propior, -ius, nearer.
proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next.
prior, -ius, former.
senex, senis (*m. only*), old; *as a noun*, an old man.

144. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Iūlia multīs annīs iūnior quam frāter est. 2. Fīliī optimōrum patrum saepe pessimī sunt. 3. Malus est Orgetorīx, pēior frāter. 4. Labiēnus decem annīs est minor nātū Caesare. 5. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est Genāva. 6. Sorōre Iūlia est pede altior. 7. Summus mōns prīmā lūce ā Labiēnō occupātus est. 8. Propior puerōrum Labiēnī fīlius est. 9. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre in hostēs pīla mittunt. 10. Caesar priōre aestāte Bibracte oppūgnāverat. 11. Virtūte atque hūmānitāte Titus apud Graecōs laudātus est. 12. Pāx melior est quam bellum.

II. 1. The manners of the girls are better than (those) of the boys. 2. Men very unlike are often friends. 3. Part of the soldiers were much disturbed in the night by a great shouting. 4. Orgetorix surrounded the place with a very high wall. 5. The poems of Homer are not very difficult. 6. The first part of the journey was very easy, but the last more difficult. 7. The mother and her daughter are very unlike. 8. Is the valor of the soldier more pleasing than the diligence of the farmer? 9. Nothing delights everybody (*omnēs*). 10. He was older than his brother, and more famous among the Helvetians.

CHAPTER XXV.

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

145.

	ADJECTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1.	miser (stem misero-), *wretched.*	miserē, *wretchedly.*
	cārus (stem cāro-), *dear.*	cārē, dearly.

Observe that adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declension are formed by dropping the final vowel of the stem and adding *ē*.[1]

Form adverbs from grātus, laetus, pulcher.

2.	ācer (stem ācri-), *sharp.*	ācri**ter**, *sharply.*
	vēlōx (stem vēlōc-), *swift.*	vēlōci**ter**, *swiftly.*
	potēns (stem potent-), *powerful.*	potent**er**, *powerfully.*

Observe that adverbs from adjectives of the third declension are formed by adding to the stem *-ter* or *-iter*. Stems ending in *nt* drop *t* before the addition.

3. Sometimes the neuter accusative and sometimes the ablative of the adjective is used as an adverb; as, multum, *much;* facile, *easily;* prīmō, *first.*

146. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cārē, *dearly.*	cārius.	cārissimē.
celeriter, *quickly.*	celerius.	celerrimē.
vēlōciter, *swiftly.*	vēlōcius.	vēlōcissimē.

Observe that in the comparative the adverb is the same as the neuter of the adjective, and that the superlative of

[1] The adverbs from **bonus** and **malus** are formed irregularly, — **benĕ, malĕ.**

the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective regularly See **145. 1.**

147. VOCABULARY.

Belgae, -ārum, *m.*, the Belgians.
causa, -ae, *f.*, reason, cause; *abl. sing.*, for the sake of.
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight.
Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul.
proelium, -ī, *n.*, battle.
ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind.
prō, *prep. with the abl.*, before, in behalf of, for.
ācriter, *adv.*, sharply.
celeriter, *adv.*, quickly.
facile, *adv.*, easily.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
graviter, *adv.*, deeply.
vēlōciter, *adv.*, swiftly.

148. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ventī māgnitūdine minus vēlōciter currit nūntius. 2. Graviter hominēs ex malīs līberōrum mōribus dolent. 3. Locus altissimō mūrō mūnītus ab Allobrogibus facile occupātus est. 4. Labiēnus ad Genāvam properāvit et prīmā lūce oppidum occupāvit. 5. Proximō proeliō Helvētiī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuērunt. 6. Iuvenēs sunt similēs nōmine, sed mōribus dissimillimī. 7. Multīs dē causīs Belgae sunt omnium Gallōrum fortissimī. 8. Caesar celeriter hostēs in fugam dat (*puts*). 9. Prō patriā omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnābunt. 10. Minor puerōrum celerius currit quam māior.

II. 1. The march was more difficult on account of a high (*māgnus*) wind. 2. All the Gauls fought bravely for their native land. 3. All the higher places had been seized by the Belgians. 4. He will hasten by forced (very great) marches into the farthest territory (pl.) of the Belgians. 5. The Romans used to have longer swords than the Germans. 6. The brothers were very unlike. 7. Julia is a year younger than (her) brother. 8. Mothers are glad

to labor (gladly labor) for (their) children. 9. A horse runs more swiftly than a man. 10. Nothing easily threw Cæsar's legions into confusion.

CHAPTER XXVI.

Fourth or *u*-Declension.

Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.

149. PARADIGMS.

	exercitus, *m.*, *army.*		**cornū**, *n.*, *horn.*	
Stem	**exercitu-**		Stem **cornu-**	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., V.	exercit**us**	exercit**ūs**	corn**ū**	corn**ua**
G.	exercit**ūs**	exercit**uum**	corn**ūs**	corn**uum**
D.	exercit**uī** (**ū**)	exercit**ībus**	corn**ū**	corn**ibus**
Ac.	exercit**um**	exercit**ūs**	corn**ū**	corn**ua**
Ab.	exercit**ū**	exercit**ībus**	corn**ū**	corn**ibus**

1. The stems of the fourth declension end in *-u.*

2. To find the stem, drop *um* of the genitive plural.

3. Make a table of terminations for both nouns.

4. GENDER. — Nouns of the fourth declension ending in *-us* are almost all masculine; in *-ū,* neuter.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

150. Learn the principal parts and present indicative active of teneō.

1. How do the terminations of the present tense differ from those of amō?

2. What is the present stem? See **56.** 1.

3. Verbs of the second conjugation may be recognized by the ending *-ēre* of the present infinitive active.

151. VOCABULARY.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (of an army).
exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.
impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, violence.
uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife.
cottīdiānus, -a, -um, daily.
dexter, -tra, -trum, right.
doleō, -ēre, doluī, be pained, grieved.
habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, have.
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move.
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, hold.
terreō, -ēre, -uī, territum, frighten.
ferē, *adv.*, almost.

152. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Labiēnus exercitum in castrīs tenet, et hostium dux dextrum cornū celeriter in superiōrem locum movet. 2. Dextrum Allobrogum cornū ab hostibus superābātur. 3. Britannia est fortissimōrum virōrum patria. 4. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae et ferē cottīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs pūgnant. 5. Prīmō impetū Labiēnus exercitum hostium in fugam dat. 6. Ariovistus Caesarem nōn prō amīcō sed prō hoste habet. 7. Genāva prīmā lūce ā Caesare occupāta est. 8. Iuvenēs prō patriā fortiter pūgnābunt. 9. Uxōrem ex Helvētiīs habet. 10. Properat in altiōrem locum castra movēre. 11. Proximā nocte exercitum ex oppidō movet et prīmā lūce dextrum Belgārum cornū ācriter oppūgnat.

II. 1. High winds do not easily frighten the sailors. 2. The year before[1] the place had been surrounded by a high wall. 3. The flight of the cavalry very much dis-

[1] See **144.** I. 10.

turbs the mind of the commander-in-chief. 4. All the young men march swiftly in the night against the army of Labienus. 5. At daybreak they make a violent (sharp) attack upon the right wing. 6. The horsemen make almost daily attacks upon the army of Cæsar. 7. He quickly moves (his) camp from the territory of the Allobroges into the territory of the Helvetians. 8. The wrongs done to (wrongs of) the Roman people were the cause of the war. 9. The general is deeply pained by the flight of (his) army. 10. Labienus was ten years older than (his) wife. 11. The cavalry sharply attack a town in the most distant territories of the Gauls.

CHAPTER XXVII.

Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active.

Dative with Adjectives.

153. Learn the imperfect and future indicative active of **teneō**.

Compare the endings with those of the same tenses of **amō**, and observe that they differ only in the final vowel of the stem.

154. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puella est cāra mātrī**, *the girl is dear to her mother.*
2. **Helvētiī proximī erant Germānīs**, *the Helvetians were nearest to the Germans.*
3. **Oppidum est urbī similis**, *a town is like a city.*

Observe that in each of these sentences the dative is dependent upon an adjective, and shows to what the quality denoted by the adjective applies.

155. RULE. — *Many adjectives take a dative to define their application.*

These are chiefly adjectives of fitness, nearness, likeness, friendliness, and their opposites.

156. VOCABULARY.

commeātus, **-ūs**, *m.*, supplies.
cōpia, **-ae**, *f.*, abundance; *in pl.*, (military) forces.
manus, **-ūs**, *f.*, hand.
memoria, **-ae**, *f.*, memory.
portus, **-ūs**, *m.*, harbor, port.
potestās, **-ātis**, *f.*, power.
Vergilius, **-ī**, *m.*, Virgil.
novus, **-a**, **-um**, new.
sinister, **-tra**, **-trum**, left.
videō, **-ēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsum**, see.

157. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Omnia oppida Belgārum in Caesaris potestāte fuērunt. 2. Carmina Vergilī, poētae Rōmānī, carminibus Homērī, poētae Graecī, similia sunt. 3. Locus castrīs nātūrā est idōneus. 4. Caesar novōs mīlitēs in castrīs tenēbit. 5. Sinistrum exercitūs cornū ab hostibus superātum est. 6. Puella dextrā manū librum, sinistrā rosam tenēbat. 7. Caesaris exercituī nihil fuit difficile. 8. Prīmā lūce multae nāvēs longae in portū fuērunt. 9. Caesar iniūriās Helvētiōrum memoriā tenēbat. 10. Dux in summō monte cōpiās hostium vidēbit. 11. Cōpia commeātūs ex Galliā celeriter portābātur.

II. 1. The almost daily attacks of the Gauls frighten the recruits (new soldiers). 2. The sailor's wife was much disturbed by the violence of the wind. 3. The

memory of wrongs is often the cause of war. 4. The flight of the soldiers deeply grieves the leader. 5. The general will easily procure supplies suitable for (his) whole army. 6. The Gauls fought bravely in defence of their native land. 7. He will quickly move his camp to a higher place. 8. The young man will see many ships in the harbors of Britain. 9. He has in the town a great supply of grain. 10. At daybreak the Belgians violently attack (make an attack violently against) the left wing.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active.

158. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative active of teneō.

What is the perfect stem of teneō? See **74.** 1.

159. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Orgetorīx commeātum habēbat, habēbit. 2. Clāmōre equum terrēbit, terruit. 3. Labiēnum dextrā manū, sinistrā Titum tenēbat. 4. Līberōs et uxōrēs Germānōrum explōrātor vidēbit, vīderat. 5. Castra minōra vidēmus, vīdimus. 6. Nihil iuvenēs terrēbit, terruit. 7. Ubi equitem celerem vīdistī, vīderās? 8. Summum montem prīmā lūce tenēbimus, tenēbāmus. 9. Iniūriās memoriā tenuerat, tenuerit. 10. Fuga equitum peditum animōs perturbābat.

II. 1. We have supplies in the town. 2. The legion had a camp on the top of the mountain. 3. You will have a supply of grain. 4. The high wind was frightening the girls. 5. Where did you see a camp? 6. Was Dumnorix in Cæsar's power? 7. They will see a large number of men. 8. They were moving (their) children from the city. 9. They moved (their) wives into the city. 10. The Belgians bravely attacked the camp.

160. VOCABULARY.

āgmen, -inis, *n.*, column, troops (in motion); **novissimum āgmen**, the rear; **prīmum āgmen**, the van.

centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion.

Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Dumnorix.

occāsus, -ūs, *m.*, a setting.

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine.

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun.

īnferus, -a, -um, low.

propter, (*prep. with acc.*), on account of.

contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, (**cum** *and* **teneō**), to hold together, restrain, hem in.

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, (**per** *and* **teneō**), to hold through, extend.

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, (**prō** *and* **habeō**), to hold off, hinder from, check.

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, (**sub** *and* **teneō**), to hold under, withstand, endure.

161. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar omnēs cōpiās in castrīs continuit. 2. Dextrum cornū Belgārum impetūs exercitūs Rōmānī facile sustinuerat. 3. Occāsū sōlis ad concilium centuriōnēs omnium ōrdinum convocātī sunt. 4. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinēbant. 5. Clāmor mīlitum novissimum āgmen Belgārum terruerat. 6. Iūdicis uxor sinistrā manū carmina Vergilī tenuit. 7. Propter māgnitūdinem ventī omnēs ferē nāvēs in portū tenuerāmus. 8. Vīdi-

stīne māgnam cōpiam nāvium longārum in portū? 9. Equitibus cōpiās Dumnorīgis commeātū prohibuimus. 10. Imperātor ad locum castrīs nātūrā idōneum exercitum mōverit. 11. Habuistīne Dumnorīgem in potestāte? 12. Prīmum āgmen ab hōrā tertiā ad sōlis occāsum impetūs hostium sustinuit.

II. 1. The right wing was lower than the left. 2. Dumnorix was not pleasing to Cæsar. 3. He will hold in memory the wrongs of (our) country. 4. We hastened with almost all (our) forces to the river and checked the van of the enemy. 5. The Belgians fought (in) almost daily battles with the Germans. 6. He kept the legion in camp on account of the wounds of the centurions. 7. Cæsar easily hindered the Helvetians from (their) journey. 8. There had been a very large supply of grain in the town. 9. We had seen a harbor suitable for war-vessels. 10. Boys, did the territories of the Belgæ extend to the river Rhine?

CHAPTER XXIX.

Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Passive.

Fifth Declension.

162. Learn the present indicative passive of habeō.

1. Compare the endings with the corresponding endings of amō.

2. Like habeō conjugate the present indicative passive of terreō, moveō, and videō.

163. PARADIGM.

	diēs, *day*. Stem **diē-**		**rēs**, *thing*. Stem **rē-**	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., V.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

1. How are the stems of these nouns found?

2. Make a table of the terminations.

3. Diēs and rēs are the only nouns of this declension which have all the cases of both numbers. The others are wanting in the plural wholly or in part.

4. GENDER. — Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except diēs, which is usually masculine in the singular, always masculine in the plural.

164. VOCABULARY.

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, line of battle.
diēs, -ēī, *m.*, day.
Divitiacus, -ī, *m.*, Divitiacus.
fidēs, -eī, *f.*, confidence.
rēs, -eī, *f.*, thing, affair.
paucī, -ae, -a, few.
pedester, -tris, -tre, of infantry, on foot.
posterus, -a, -um, following, after.
expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take by storm.
incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, urge on, arouse, incite.
valeō, -ēre, valuī, be strong.

165. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Posterō diē exercitus in castrīs ā Caesare continētur. 2. Divitiacō[1] Caesar māximam fidem habēbat.

[1] Dative.

3. Vergilius optimus poētārum Rōmānōrum habētur. 4. Impetus hostium ā tertiā aciē sustinētur. 5. Multae rēs populum Rōmānum ad bellum incitābant. 6. Rōmānī pedestribus cōpiīs plūrimum valēbant. 7. Oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus expūgnātum est. 8. Memoria priōrum proeliōrum centuriōnēs dēlectābat. 9. Helvētiī flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō continentur. 10. Occāsū sōlis ā cīvibus in summō monte novissimum āgmen vidētur. 11. Commeātūs[1] causā in fīnēs Allobrogum exercitus properāvit. 12. Peditēs ex īnferiōre locō pīla in cōpiās hostium mittunt.

II. 1. A harbor suitable for war-vessels is seen by the scout. 2. The infantry are kept from the territories of the Belgians by an attack of the cavalry. 3. Slaves are in the power of (their) masters. 4. Is the pupil's book held in the left hand? 5. We soldiers are kept in camp on account of our wounds. 6. In the next summer the Gauls were aroused to war by a few chiefs. 7. The territory of the Belgians extends to the river Rhine. 8. A day is longer in summer than in winter. 9. Not all things are difficult. 10. The king is strong in the great number of (his) cavalry. 11. The line of battle was very long. 12. The town had been taken by storm in the first part of the summer. 13. I have the greatest confidence in (my) father.[2]

---

[1] The ablative **causā**, *for the sake of*, is used with the genitive, which regularly precedes it.

[2] See I. 2, note.

LIBRARY OF THE

CHAPTER XXX.

Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive.

Nine Irregular Adjectives.

166. Learn the imperfect and future indicative passive of **habeō**.

Like **habeō** conjugate the imperfect and future indicative passive of **moveō**, **teneō**, and **videō**.

167. The following adjectives, regular in the plural, end in *-īus* in the genitive singular, and in *-ī* in the dative singular.

alius, *other.*	tōtus, *whole.*	alter, *the other (of two).*
nūllus, *no, none.*	ūllus, *any.*	neuter, *neither (of two).*
sōlus, *alone.*	ūnus, *one.*	ūter, *which (of two).*

168. PARADIGMS.

	alius, *other.*			**ūnus**, *one.*		
	Stem **alio-, alia-**			Stem **ūno-, ūna-**		
	SINGULAR.					
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	**alius**	**alia**	**aliud**	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**
G.	**alīus**	**alīus**	**alīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**
D.	**aliī**	**aliī**	**aliī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**
Ac.	**alium**	**aliam**	**aliud**	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**
Ab.	**aliō**	**aliā**	**aliō**	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**

Notice that **alius** has *d*, not *m*, in the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

169. VOCABULARY.

cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*, state.
Iūra, -ae, *m.*, the Jura (mountains).
lātitūdō, -inis, *f.*, (**lātus**), width.
Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone.
alius, -a, -ud, other.
alter, -era, -erum, other (of two).
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only.
tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire.
ūnus, -a, -um, one.
timeō, -ēre, -uī, to fear.
undique, *adv.*, on all sides.

170. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continēbantur; ūnā ex parte, flūmine Rhodanō lātissimō; alterā ex parte, monte Iūrā altissimō. 2. Divitiācus sōlus ex omnī cīvitāte Germānīs līberōs obsidēs nōn dedit. 3. Propter māgnitūdinem silvārum et lātitūdinem flūminum iter timēbat. 4. Multae rēs Orgetorīgem ad aliud proelium incitābant. 5. Paucīs diēbus oppidum ab hostibus tenēbitur. 6. Aliī aliā rē[1] valent. 7. Centuriōnēs sōlī posterō diē in concilium ā Caesare convocātī sunt. 8. Pedestria itinera ā nautīs habēbantur difficillima. 9. Aciēs Rōmāna ā flūmine ad īnfimum[2] montem pertinēbat. 10. Facile erit commeātū hostēs prohibēre. 11. Imperātor centuriōnibus[3] māximam fidem habēbat. 12. Tōtum āgmen ūnō tempore vidēbitur.

II. 1. On account of the height of the wall, he did not take the town by storm. 2. The attacks of the enemy were bravely endured by the whole line. 3. The cavalry make a violent (*ācer*) attack on the Roman column. 4. He has great confidence in the whole army.[3] 5. Some centurions were wounded on one day, others on another. 6. The camp will be moved to a higher place

[1] *Others in another thing*; i.e. *Some in one thing, others in another.*
[2] *Lowest, lowest part of, base of.* [3] See **165.** I. 2.

in a few days. 7. In one hand he held a book, in the other a stone. 8. Cæsar with the third legion alone will storm the town. 9. The village is hemmed in on all sides by very high mountains. 10. A place is being prepared for another band of Germans. 11. The whole state feared the name of Ariovistus.

171. READING LESSON.

NOTE. — In the reading lessons, all words not previously given in the special vocabularies are translated in parentheses. This does not apply to numerals, which must be sought in Chapters XXXII. and XXXIII.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, Book I. 1–4.]

Galliae omnis sunt partēs trēs. Ūnīus partis Belgae sunt incolae, alīus Aquitānī (*Aquitanians*), tertiae Celtae (*Celts*). Rōmānī Celtās Gallōs vocābant. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī erant Belgae. Belgae saepe cum Germānīs pūgnābant. Belgae et Helvētiī proximī erant Germānīs. Helvētiī ferē cottīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs pūgnābant. Belgae continēbantur marī, Rhēnō flūmine, Mātronā (*Marne*) et Sēquanā (*Seine*) flūminibus. Gallī fīnibus Belgārum, Rhēnō et Rhodanō flūminibus, Garumnā (*Garonne*) flūmine, marī continēbantur. Aquitānī ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs (*Pyrenees*) montēs et mare pertinēbant. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx. Helvētiī undique locī nātūrā continēbantur. In aliam partem Galliae iter facere (*to make*) parābant. Orgetorīgem lēgātum ad aliōs Gallōs mīsērunt (*they sent*). In itinere Casticum (*Casticus*, a man's name) Sēquanum (*a Sequanian*) et Dumnorīgem Aeduum (*an Aeduan*) amīcōs facit. Dumnorīgī fīliam dat uxōrem. Orgetorīgī[1]

[1] See **48** and **49**.

in animō erat rēx esse in Helvētiīs. Casticus et Dumnorīx Orgetorīgem iuvābant. Rēs Helvētiīs narrāta est et Orgetorīx accūsātus est. Servōs et amīcōs convocāvit. Per amīcōs et servōs līberātus est, sed paucīs diēbus post (*afterward*) mortuus est (*he died*).

CHAPTER XXXI.

Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive.

172. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative passive of habeō.

For explanation in regard to these tenses, see **119**. 1, 2, and 3.

173. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Corpore āc animō centuriō valēbat. 2. Titus corpore plūs valet quam animō. 3. Posterō diē castra moventur, movēbuntur. 4. Castra celeriter mōta sunt, mōta erant. 5. Paucī equitum ab explōrātōre vīsī sunt, vīsī erant. 6. Obsidēs in potestāte Caesaris tenēbantur, tenēbuntur. 7. Aliī hostēs, aliī longitūdinem itineris timēbant, timuerant. 8. Ā cūstōde vidēberis, vīsus erās. 9. Flūminibus continēbimur, continēmur. 10. Legiōnēs in castrīs continēbantur, contentae sunt.

II. 1. The line of battle was extending, it will extend to the foot of (*īnfimus*) the mountain. 2. The attack had been sustained, it will be sustained. 3. Dumnorix alone

will be kept, he has been kept in Cæsar's power. 4. You had been seen, you have been seen by the soldier's wife. 5. We shall be seen, we shall have been seen in the city in a few days. 6. The judge is feared, he will be feared by the bad only. 7. The cavalry had been kept from the Rhone. 8. The state was incited, it will be incited to war by the slaughter of the citizens. 9. The town had been taken by storm the year before. 10. We will attack, we were attacking the left wing.

174. VOCABULARY.

auctōritās, **-ātis**, *f.*, influence, authority.
Bellovacī, **-ōrum**, *m.*, the Bellovaci.
Casticus, **-ī**, *m.*, Casticus.
prōvincia, **-ae**, *f.*, province.
rēgnum, **-i**, *n.*, kingdom, royal power.
Sēquanus, **-ī**, *m.*, a Sequanian.
duo, two.
noster, **-tra**, **-trum**, our.
obtineō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-tentum**, hold.
compleō, **-ēre**, **-ēvī**, **-ētum**, fill, cover.
inter (*prep. with acc.*), between, among.
omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, in all.

175. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Helvētiīs erant omnīnō itinera duo; ūnum per Sēquanōs inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum; alterum per prōvinciam nostram. 2. Rēgnum in cīvitāte Sēquanōrum ā Casticī patre obtentum est. 3. Tōtus mōns ā Caesare complētus est hominibus. 4. Orgetorīgis auctōritās inter Helvētiōs nōn parva erat. 5. Pedestrēs cōpiās sōlās Sēquanī timēbant. 6. Aliī in aliam partem equōs incitābant. 7. Plūrimum inter Belgās Bellovacōrum auctōritās et[1] virtūte et hominum numerō valēbat. 8. Cae-

[1] **Et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*

sar tertiae legiōnis mīlitibus summam fidem habēbat. 9. Rhodanus flūmen est inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum. 10. Posterō diē nostra aciēs superiōrem locum obtinuit.

II. 1. The young man had few friends, the old man many. 2. Our soldiers quickly took the town by storm. 3. Orgetorix did not seize the royal power in the Helvetian state. 4. The whole camp had been filled with the enemy. 5. There was only one legion in Gaul. 6. The sons will be praised by their fathers for their diligence. 7. Have you seen many large rivers? 8. Cæsar had confidence in the third legion only. 9. The town was bounded on one side by a stream of great width, on the other by a high mountain. 10. The judge is a man of great influence among our citizens.

CHAPTER XXXII.

Third Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.

Cardinal Numbers; Accusative of Extent.

176. Learn from the vocabulary the principal parts of dūcō. What is the present stem? See **56**. 1.

Verbs of the third conjugation may be recognized by the ending *-ĕre* of the present infinitive active.

177. Learn the present indicative active of dūcō (p. 211).

Notice that the stem-vowel *ĕ* is lost before *-ō*, becomes *ŭ* before *-nt*, and *ĭ* before other endings.

178. CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum	30. trīgintā
2. duo, duae, duo	40. quadrāgintā
3. trēs, tria	50. quīnquāgintā
4. quattuor	60. sexāgintā
5. quīnque	70. septuāgintā
6. sex	80. octōgintā
7. septem	90. nōnāgintā
8. octō	100. centum
9. novem	101. centum ūnus *or* centum et ūnus
10. decem	
11. ūndecim	102. centum duo *or* centum et duo
12. duodecim	
13. tredecim	200. ducentī, -ae, -a
14. quattuordecim	300. trecentī, -ae, -a
15. quīndecim	400. quadringentī, -ae, -a
16. sēdecim	500. quīngentī, -ae, -a
17. septendecim	600. sēscentī, -ae, -a
18. duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)	700. septingentī, -ae, -a
19. ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)	800. octingentī, -ae, -a
20. vīgintī	900. nōngentī, -ae, -a
21. vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī	1000. mīlle
	2000. duo mīlia
22. vīgintī duo *or* duo et vīgintī	10,000. decem mīlia
28. duodētrīgintā	100,000. centum mīlia
29. ūndētrīgintā	

179. DECLENSION OF CARDINALS.

Cardinal numerals are indeclinable except **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, the hundreds from **ducentī** to **nōngentī** inclusive, and **mīlia**, the plural of **mīlle**. For the declension of **ūnus** see **168**.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Duo and trēs are thus declined: —

180. PARADIGMS.

	duo, *two.*			**trēs**, *three.*		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

1. The hundreds, ducentī to nōngentī, are declined like the plural of bonus.

2. In the singular mīlle is generally an adjective, but the plural mīlia is always a noun of the neuter gender, declined like the neuter plural of trēs, and is followed by the partitive genitive; as, mīlle mīlitēs, *a thousand soldiers;* but tria mīlia mīlitum, *three thousand soldiers* (*three thousands of soldiers*).

181. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Caesar paucōs diēs īn oppidō exercitum continēbat,** *Cæsar kept his army in the town for a few days.*
2. **Legiōnēs multōs annōs in Galliā fuerant,** *the legions had been many years in Gaul.*
3. **Flūmen est pedēs trēs altum,** *the river is three feet deep.*
4. **Puer sēscentōs passūs currit,** *the boy runs six hundred paces.*

Observe that *diēs* and *annōs* denote duration of time, and are in the accusative case. They answer the question, *How long?* Observe, also, that *pedēs* and *passūs* denote extent of space, and are in the accusative. They answer the question, *How far?*

182. RULE. — *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

183. VOCABULARY.

longitūdō, -inis, *f.*, length.
passus, -ūs, *m.*, a pace.
quot, *indeclinable adj.*, how many.
trēs, three.
quattuor, four.
quīnque, five.
sex, six.
vigintī, twenty.
quadrāgintā, forty.
sexāgintā, sixty.
octōgintā, eighty.
centum, one hundred.
ducentī, -ae, -a, two hundred.
trecentī, -ae, -a, three hundred.
mīlle, one thousand.
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run.
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, do; **bellum gerere,** carry on war.
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send.

184. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mēnsa erat trēs pedēs longa, et duōs pedēs lāta. 2. Fīnēs Helvētiōrum in longitūdinem mīlia passuum centum et octōgintā pertinēbant. 3. Belgae cum Germānīs multōs annōs bellum gerunt.[1] 4. Nostrī[2] multās hōrās cum hostibus pūgnābant. 5. Quot diēs habet annus? Trecentōs et sexāgintā quīnque. 6. Ē prōvinciā in fīnēs Allobrogum quīnque legiōnēs lēgātus mittit. 7. Quot equitēs erant in castrīs? Equitum mīlia erant omnīnō sex. 8. Labiēnus tōtum diem iter facit, et occāsū sōlis oppidum mīlia passuum sex ā Belgīs occupat. 9. Arbor in hortō sexāgintā pedēs alta est. 10. Divitiacus nostrā memoriā rēgnum māgnae partis Galliae obtinuit. 11. Lēgātus cum sōlā decimā legiōne prōvinciam obtinēbit.

---

[1] English, *have been*, etc. [2] See **51**, foot-note.

II. 1. The forest is six miles long and four miles wide. 2. There were in the army forty thousand five hundred men. 3. How many hours were there in a day among the Romans? Twelve. 4. One seized the royal power in one state, another in another. 5. The route between the river Rhone and the Jura mountains was difficult. 6. The influence of Dumnorix among the Helvetii was greater than (that) of Divitiacus. 7. Cæsar held one mountain, the enemy the other. 8. The towns of the Sequanians were filled with our men. 9. How many miles does the city extend? 10. The army marches forty miles in two days.

185. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, Book I. 5–9.]

Helvētiīs in animō erat per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter facere (*to make*). Frūmentum et multās aliās rēs in itinere portāre parābant. Duo omnīnō itinera erant: ūnum difficile, per Sēquanōrum fīnēs, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, alterum per prōvinciam Rōmānam, multō facilius. Allobrogēs ā Rōmānīs superātī erant. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum erat proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva. Caesar summā celeritāte ad Genāvam legiōnem dūcit. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Caesar Helvētiīs iter per prōvinciam nōn dat, sed legiōne aliīsque mīlitibus ad montem Iūram mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim dūcit, et Helvētiōs itinere prohibet. Helvētiī alterā viā (*road*) per Sēquanōs iter facere volēbant (*wished*) sed Sēquanī iter nōn dabant. Ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum lēgātōs mittunt Helvētiī.

Dumnorīx apud Sēquanōs plūrimum valēbat auctōritāte et Helvētiīs propter uxōrem amīcus erat. Sēquanī Dumnorīgis auctoritāte mōtī (*moved*) Helvētiīs per fīnēs iter dant.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

Third Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active.

Ordinal Numerals.

186. Learn the imperfect and future indicative active of dūcō.

Observe that the endings of the imperfect are the same as those of the first and second conjugations, while those of the future are different.

Write a table of future endings for the third conjugation, active voice, and commit to memory.

187. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

1st. prīmus	11th. ūndecimus
2d. secundus	12th. duodecimus
3d. tertius	13th. tertius decimus
4th. quārtus	14th. quārtus decimus
5th. quīntus	15th. quīntus decimus
6th. sextus	16th. sextus decimus
7th. septimus	17th. septimus decimus
8th. octāvus	18th. duodēvīcēsimus
9th. nōnus	19th. ūndēvīcēsimus
10th. decimus	20th. vīcēsimus

21st. vīcēsimus prīmus *or* ūnus et vīcēsimus	60th. sexāgēsimus
28th. duodētrīcēsimus	70th. septuāgēsimus
29th. ūndētrīcēsimus	80th. octōgēsimus
30th. trīcēsimus	90th. nōnāgēsimus
40th. quadrāgēsimus	100th. centēsimus
50th. quīnquāgēsimus	200th. ducentēsimus
	1000th. mīllēsimus

Ordinal numerals are declined like **bonus.**

188. VOCABULARY.

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, arrival, approach.
Hannibal, -alis, *m.*, Hannibal.
Ītalia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.
manipulus, -ī, *m.*, a maniple.
certus, -a, -um, certain.
Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic, of Gaul.
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead.
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, gather, read.
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, write.
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.
quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.
sextus, -a, -um, sixth.
decimus, -a, -um, tenth.
vīcēsimus, -a, -um, twentieth.

189. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Puerī sextum dē Bellō Gallicō librum legēbant. 2. Uxōrem dē adventū fīliārum trium certiōrem[1] facit. 3. Vīcēsimus aciēī mīles pīlō vulnerātus est. 4. Duābus hōrīs decem mīlia passuum nūntius curret. 5. Ā prōvinciā in fīnēs Belgārum vīgintī diēbus exercitum dūcit. 6. Quīntō bellī annō urbs ā Rōmānīs expūgnāta est. 7. Cohors decima pars legiōnis Rōmānae, manipulus tertia pars cohortis erat. 8. Peditum mīlia sex et equitum mīlia quattuor in proeliō pūgnāvērunt. 9. Scrībētisne, puerī, epistulās ad patrēs? Scrībēmus. 10. Hannibal māgnum exercitum in Ītaliam dūcit et multīs proeliīs

[1] **Certiōrem facit,** *makes more certain*, i.e. *informs.*

Rōmānōs superat. 11. Vigilia apud Rōmānōs quārta pars noctis erat. 12. Ducentōs quadrāgintā quattuor annōs rēgēs Rōmānōrum rēgnum obtinēbant. 13. In portū erant trecentae octōgintā nāvēs.

II. 1. We shall write many letters from the city to (our) friends. 2. A friend of the Roman people had for many years held the royal power among the Sequanians. 3. How many legions were (there) in our province? 4. (There) were in all in the state of the Æduans three legions and four cohorts. 5. We were reading about the arrival of Hannibal in Gaul. 6. The town was filled with cavalry and foot-soldiers. 7. Through the influence of Orgetorix, the Æduans were carrying on war with the Germans. 8. Our state extends in length two hundred miles, and in breadth one hundred. 9. On the fifth day at sunset he takes the town by storm. 10. On the fourteenth day the general will lead from Italy six cohorts of the second legion.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active.

Personal and Reflexive Pronouns.

190. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses of the indicative active of dūcō. Compare the endings with those of the same tenses of amō and habeō.

191. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Multōs annōs Hannibal cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbat, gesserat. 2. Quot epistulās ūnō annō scrībis, scrīpsistī? 3. Quattuor librōs dē Bellō Gallicō legēmus, lēgimus. 4. Equōs sexāgintā in castra mittēmus, mīsimus. 5. Centuriō manipulum dūcēbat, dūxerat. 6. Nūntius ūnō diē vīgintī mīlia passuum curret, cucurrit. 7. Peditēs pīla celeriter mittent, mīserint. 8. Nautae frūmentō nāvēs complent, complēvērunt. 9. Rēgnum in Sēquanīs a Rōmānōrum amīcō obtinēbitur, obtinēbātur. 10. In prōvinciam cōpiās lēgātus dūcet, dūcēbat, dūxit.

II. 1. Our pupils have read, they will read many good books. 2. I have written to my father, I shall write. 3. Three hundred men were wounded, they had been wounded in the first battle. 4. How many books did you write, how many had you written? 5. The soldier will send many presents to (his) son, he has sent many. 6. I will lead the horse to the general. 7. On the fifth day the general was wounded, on the sixth the camp was stormed. 8. The boys will run, they were running very swiftly. 9. I will send (my) children to Italy, I have sent (them). 10. The ships will be filled, they had been filled with men.

Personal Pronouns.

192. PARADIGMS.

FIRST PERSON.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. **egŏ**, *I.*	**nōs**, *we.*
G. **meī**, *of me.*	**nostrum** *or* **nostrī**, *of us.*
D. **mihĭ (mī)**, *to, for me.*	**nōbīs**, *to, for us.*

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Ac.	**mē**, *me.*	**nōs**, *us.*
Ab.	**mē**, *from, by, with,* etc., *me.*	**nōbīs**, *from, by, with,* etc., *us.*

SECOND PERSON.

N., V.	**tū**, (*thou*) *you.*	**vōs**, *you.*
G.	**tuī**, *of* (*thee*) *you.*	**vestrum** *or* **vestrī**, *of you.*
D.	**tibĭ**, *to, for* (*thee*) *you.*	**vōbīs**, *to, for you.*
Ac.	**tē**, (*thee*) *you.*	**vōs**, *you.*
Ab.	**tē**, *from, by, with,* etc., (*thee*) *you.*	**vōbīs**, *from, by, with,* etc., *you.*

THIRD PERSON.

Reflexive.

N.	———	———
G.	**suī**, *of him* (*self*), *her* (*self*), *it* (*self*).	**suī**, *of them* (*selves*).
D.	**sibĭ**, *to, for him* (*self*), etc.	**sibĭ**, *to, for them* (*selves*).
Ac.	**sē, sēsē**, *him* (*self*), etc.	**sē, sēsē**, *them* (*selves*).
Ab.	**sē, sēsē**, *from, by, with,* etc., *him* (*self*).	**sē, sēsē**, *from, by, with,* etc., *them* (*selves*).

1. The reflexive regularly refers to the subject of the sentence; as, **Iūlia sē culpat**, *Julia blames herself.* The place of the reflexive of the first and second person is supplied by the personal pronouns **ego, tū, nōs, vōs**; as, **Ego mē culpō**, *I blame myself;* **tū tē culpās**, *you blame yourself.*

2. The forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used chiefly as partitive genitives. See **135**.

3. There are in Latin no special forms for the personal pronouns *he, she, it,* and *they.* For the substitutes see **208**. 1.

4. When used with personal and reflexive pronouns, the preposition **cum** is enclitic (see **4**. 7); as, **mēcum, sēcum, vōbīscum**. So also with relative pronouns; as, **quōcum, quācum, quibuscum.**

193. VOCABULARY.

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero.
tempestās, -ātis, *f.*, storm, tempest.
ego, I.
tū, thou.
suī, of himself, herself, itself.
iam, *adv.*, now, already.
adversus, -a, -um, unfavorable, adverse; **adversae rēs,** adversity.
secundus, -a, -um, favorable.
secundae rēs, prosperity.
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, drive, do, act.

194. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ego tertiā diēī hōrā epistulam scrībēbam, tū carmina Homērī legēbās. 2. Iūlia sē semper laudat, sed mē semper culpat. 3. Quot annōs habet Cornēlia? Quīnque annōs habet. 4. Lēgerat quattuor dē Bellō Gallicō librōs. 5. Silva sex mīlia passuum in lātitūdinem pertinet. 6. Nōmina multōrum poētārum sunt cāra nōbīs. 7. Adversa tempestās in lītus nōs ēgerat. 8. Nūntius dē fugā Hannibalis fuit certus. 9. Multae nāvēs longae propter tempestātem in nostrum portum cucurrerant. 10. In rēbus secundīs omnēs amīcōs habent. 11. Tibi dabō duōs pulcherrimōs librōs. Quid tū mihi dabis? 12. Paucī nostrōrum[1] impetum equitum sustinuērunt. 13. Ducem vōbīscum mīlia passuum decem mittēmus. 14. Hannibal iam multās Ītaliae cīvitātēs expūgnāverat. 15. Rēs adversae saepe fortium animōs terrent.

II. 1. The garden extends two hundred feet in length and one hundred in breadth. 2. He leads two maniples of the second cohort to the top of the mountain. 3. How many books do you read in a year? 4. You will read with me the first book of the Gallic War. 5. I shall read

[1] *Our* (*men*).

a good book, but you will write a letter to (your) mother. 6. He informs[1] me of the arrival of my father. 7. There was a river between the Romans and the camp of Hannibal. 8. On the fourteenth day we saw a wide river, and on the twentieth a very high mountain. 9. I am the fifth, you are the sixth. 10. Nothing is dearer to me than (my) country. 11. The tempest will drive many ships into the harbor.

195. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, Book I. 10–12.]

Helvētiīs in animō erat per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum (*the Santŏnes*) fīnēs facere. Santonēs proximī erant prōvinciae Rōmānae. Caesar ex Ītaliā quīnque legiōnēs in Galliam dūxit. In itinere cum montium incolīs pūgnābat. Caesaris adventū Helvētiī iam per Sēquanōrum fīnēs in Aeduōrum agrōs cōpiās dūxerant et Aeduōrum agrōs vāstābant. Aeduī et aliī Rōmānōrum amīcī ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt. Caesar Aeduōs iuvāre et Helvētiōs superāre voluit (*wished*). Flūmen est Arar (*the Saône*) quod (*which*) per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit (*flows*). Helvētiī trēs iam partēs cōpiārum trāns (*across*) Ararim flūmen dūxerant, quārtam ferē partem nōn trādūxerant (*had led across*). Omnis cīvitātis Helvētiōrum quattuor partēs erant. Caesar in quārtam Helvētiōrum partem impetum facit. Multī occīsī sunt (*were killed*); reliquī fugae sē mandāvērunt (*gave up*).

---

[1] Cf. **189.** I. 2.

CHAPTER XXXV.

Third Conjugation: Present and Imperfect Passive.

Possessive Pronouns.

196. Learn the present and imperfect indicative passive of dūcō.

197. From the personal pronouns are formed the possessive pronouns.

meus, -a, -um, *my.* **tuus, -a, -um,** *thy.*
noster, -tra, -trum, *our.* **vester, -tra, -trum,** *your.*
suus, -a, -um, *his, hers, their.*

1. These are adjectives in construction and they are declined as regular adjectives of the first and second declension, except that the vocative singular masculine of meus is usually mī, sometimes meus.

2. Suus, like the personal pronoun from which it is formed, is reflexive.

3. Possession is denoted by the possessive pronouns, not by the genitive of the personal pronouns. Puer suam mātrem amat, *the boy loves his mother.*

198. VOCABULARY.

rīpa, -ae, *f.,* bank.
vīcus, -ī, *m.,* village.
meus, -a, -um, my.
tuus, -a, -um, thy, your.
noster, -tra, -trum, our.
vester, -tra, -trum, your.
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their.
dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, divide, separate.
exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wait for, expect.
incolō, -ere, -coluī, live in, inhabit.
ante (*prep. with acc.*), before.

199. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mīlitēs novī in cohortēs dīviduntur.[1] 2. Explōrātor dē omnibus rēbus Caesarem cottīdiē certiōrem facit. 3. Ante adventum vestrum, amīcī, quīntum dē Bellō Gallicō librum legēbam. 4. Rēbus in adversīs paucī, in secundīs multī hominibus amīcī sunt. 5. Prīmam lūcem in rīpā flūminis exspectābam. 6. Ūnam partem Galliae incolunt Belgae, aliam Gallī. 7. Tē et amīcum tuum in vīcō exspectābit. 8. Duōs nūntiōs ad Hannibalem iam mīserat. 9. Epistula tua, mī fīlī,[2] multum mē dēlectāvit. 10. Summam suōrum[3] virtūtem Caesar laudat. 11. Cicerō ad amīcōs multās epistulās scrīpsit. 12. Bellum cum multīs cīvitātibus ab Hannibale gerēbātur. 13. Nāvis nostra in portum tempestāte agēbātur.

II. 1. The Allobroges used to live near the Roman province. 2. Your letter, brother, was very welcome to me. 3. A watch was the fourth part of a night. 4. The messenger informs Orgetorix of the arrival of Cæsar in Gaul. 5. The boy sees himself in the water. 6. The tenth legion was being led through our province. 7. We were reading with pleasure the poems of Virgil. 8. He was writing a letter to his sister before my arrival. 9. Our forces were being quickly led into the territory of the Sequanians. 10. I have few books; you have many. 11. We shall often be reading the fourth, fifth, and sixth hours of the day. 12. Our field is being divided by a wall into two parts.

---

[1] *Are being divided.* [2] Vocative.

[3] The possessive pronouns are used frequently agreeing with an omitted noun. Cf. **194.** I. 12.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

Third Conjugation: Future, Perfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive.

200. Learn the future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative passive of dūcō.

Observe that the last three tenses do not differ in form from the same tenses of the first and second conjugations.

201. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Dīviditur, dīvīsum est. 2. Scrībunt, scrībēbunt. 3. Mittitur, mittētur, mittuntur. 4. Agitur, agēbātur. 5. Legunt, legent, lēgērunt. 6. Urbs in sex partēs dīvidētur. 7. Carmina scrībentur. 8. Ab amīcō epistula missa est. 9. Nāvis in lītus ācta est. 10. In rīpā Rhodanī vōs exspectābāmus. 11. Liber ab omnibus legētur. 12. Mīlia passuum duo cucurrimus. 13. In vīcō puerī vīsī sunt. 14. Paucīs diēbus in urbem mittentur. 15. Tōtum diem in castrīs contentī erāmus.

II. 1. We shall be separated, we have been separated. 2. It will be driven, it was being driven. 3. We were standing, we had stood. 4. They will be led, they were being led. 5. We shall be kept, they were kept. 6. They had been separated by a wall. 7. We will wait for your coming. 8. The ship was driven from the shore by the storm. 9. The field will be divided into two parts. 10. The poem has been read by my sister. 11. The troops will be led into Gaul. 12. We shall stand on the bank of the river.

202. VOCABULARY.

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, (**dē** + **dūcō**, lead from,) lead away, withdraw.

discēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, withdraw.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain.

petō, -ere, -īvī *or* **-iī, -ītum,** ask.

pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand.

hīberna, -ōrum, *n.*, winter quarters.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, labor.

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.

regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, district, region.

salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety.

mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe.

mātūrē, *adv.*, early.

203. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt. 2. Apud Rōmānōs diēs in duodecim hōrās, nox in quattuor vigiliās dīvīsa erat. 3. Caesar mātūrius quam tempus annī pōstulābat in hīberna exercitum dēdūxit. 4. Ante hiemem exercitus noster in hīberna dēductus erit. 5. Paucōs diēs amīcī meī in urbe manēbunt. 6. Diēs nōbīs ad labōrem datur. 7. Paucī hostium fugā salūtem sibi petiērunt. 8. Lēgātus exercitum in aliam regiōnem dēdūxerat. 9. Vīgintī diēbus ante[1] frūmentum in meō agrō nōn fuit mātūrum. 10. Bonus cīvis suā salūte patriam cāriōrem habēbit. 11. Cōpiae prīmā lūce ā rīpā Rhodanī discēssērunt. 12. Gravissimum labōrem propter līberōs suōs saepe sustinent mulierēs. 13. Līberōs obsidēs ā Gallīs pōstulāvit Ariovistus.

II. 1. Our city is divided into ten wards (*regiō*). 2. Our affairs are dear to us, yours to you. 3. Your prosperity will always delight me. 4. A swift messenger had been sent by the shortest route to the winter quarters of Labienus. 5. Storms kept us in the village

[1] *Before by twenty days; twenty days ago.* Ante is an *adverb* here.

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

many days. 6. My son often asks me for money.[1] 7. Did Germans use to live on the island of Britain? 8. I had already waited for you two hours. 9. We remained in port on account of the violence of the storm. 10. The ship was driven swiftly through the water. 11. You were friendly to us in adversity. 12. The young man had withdrawn from the army on account of a wound.

204. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, Book I. 13–15.]

Ūnam partem Helvētiōrum Caesar iam superāverat. Cōpiās suās celeriter trāns (*across*) Ararim dūxit contrā (*against*) aliās trēs partēs. Helvētiī ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt. Prīnceps lēgātōrum, Divicō, cum Caesare ēgit (*treated*, i.e. *talked*): "Pācem petimus ā tē. Sī (*if*) pācem faciēs (*will make*), ībimus (*will go*) in eam (*that*) partem atque ibi (*there*) erimus ubi (*where*) nōs cōnstitueris (*settle*, fut. perf. of *cōnstituō*); sīn (*but if*) bellum nobīscum gerēs, tē superābimus, et locus ubi (*where*) sumus ex calamitāte (*the misfortune*) populī Rōmānī nōmen habēbit." Caesar respondit (*replied*): "Sī (*if*) obsidēs mihi dabitis et sī Aeduīs et Allobrogibus satisfaciētis (*give satisfaction*), pāx erit." Divicō respondit, "Helvētiī obsidēs nōn dabunt," et discēssit. Posterō diē Helvētiī castra movent. Caesaris equitēs cum Helvētiīs pūgnant et superantur. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat et hostēs ā populātiōnibus (*devastations*) prohibēbat. Diēs quīndecim iter fēcērunt (perf. of *faciō*).

[1] For the case of the thing asked for, and the person from whom it is asked with **petere**, see I. 1, above.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

205. PARADIGMS.

SINGULAR.

	hīc, *this.*			ille, *that.*	
hīc	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud
hūius	hūius	hūius	illīus	illīus	illīus
huīc	huīc	huīc	illī	illī	illī
hunc	hanc	hōc	illum	illam	illud
hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL.

hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

1. Hīc refers to that which is near the speaker and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person: hīc puer, *this boy.*

2. Iste, *that* (*of yours*), is declined like ille. It is applied to that which is near or has some connection with the person addressed, and so is called the *demonstrative of the second person:* iste puer, *that boy of yours.*

3. Ille is applied to what is more remote, and so is called the *demonstrative of the third person:* ille puer, *that boy.*

4. When hīc and ille are contrasted, hīc usually means *the latter*, and ille *the former.*

Ille agreeing with a noun frequently means *well-known.*

206. VOCABULARY.

Aeduī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aeduans.
initium, -ī, *n.*, beginning.
nēmō, -inis, *m.*, nobody.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, oration.
sīgnum, -ī, *n.*, standard, sign.
hīc, haec, hōc, this.
ille, illa, illud, that.
iste, ista, istud, that (of yours).
clārus, -a, -um, eminent.
mīlitāris, -e, military.
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say.
cūr, *adv.*, why?

207. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ego et amīcī meī hōc vīcō dēlectāmur. 2. Hīc paucōs diēs in urbe manēbit, ille in lītus prōperābit. 3. Iste liber est pulcherrimus. 4. Vergilius et Caesar clārī Rōmānī fuērunt; ille poēta, hīc perītus reī[1] mīlitāris fuit. 5. Aquilae erant sīgna mīlitāria legiōnum Rōmānārum. 6. Hannibal cum cōpiīs suīs ex illā regiōne iam discēsserat. 7. Nēmō libentius tē videt quam ego. 8. Initiō ōrātiōnis multa dē virtūte cīvium nostrōrum Cicerō dīxit. 9. Agricola ante lūcem initium labōris saepe facit. 10. Cūr lēgātus mātūrius[2] in hīberna cōpiās suās dēdūxit? 11. Nēmō omnium cīvium nostrōrum clārior est illō virō.

II. 1. These children asked their father for a new book. 2. This boy is two years younger than that (one). 3. The winter quarters of our two legions were separated by a marsh. 4. We were waiting for you in the village all day. 5. Men used to live in villages for the sake of safety. 6. The Helvetians demanded the noblest of the Æduans as hostages. 7. The bank of the river was covered (filled) with large trees. 8. Why had the

[1] **Perītus** and many other adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning.

[2] See **127. 3.**

forces of Labienus been led away to their winter quarters unusually[1] early that year? 9. The grain in your fields will be ripe in a few days. 10. We saw the eagle of the tenth legion among the military standards. 11. Those boys of yours say many things about themselves. 12. These women do not ask the enemy for peace.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Demonstrative Pronouns. — *Continued.*

208. PARADIGMS.

is, *this*, *that*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	**is**	**ea**	**id**	**eī (iī)**	**eae**	**ea**
G.	**ēius**	**ēius**	**ēius**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
D.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**	**eīs (iīs)**	**eīs (iīs)**	**eīs (iīs)**
Ac.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Ab.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**eīs (iīs)**	**eīs (iīs)**	**eīs (iīs)**

īdem, *same*.

N.	**īdem**	**eadem**	**idem**	**eīdem (iīdem)**	**eaedem**	**eadem**
G.	**ēiusdem**	**ēiusdem**	**ēiusdem**	**eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
D.	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīsdem (iīsdem)**		
Ac.	**eundem**	**eandem**	**idem**	**eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eōsdem**
Ab.	**eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**	**eīsdem (iīsdem)**		

[1] Compare I. 10, above.

ipse, *self.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsa**
G.	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
D.	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**
Ac.	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**	**ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsa**
Ab.	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**

1. **Is** is sometimes used as the personal pronoun of the third person, and then means *he, she, it.*

2. **Ipse**, the intensive pronoun, is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun expressed or understood with which it agrees as an adjective. The reflexive pronoun **sē**, *self*, is always used substantively. The following sentences will illustrate the use of the two.

1. **Mīles sē laudat,** *the soldier praises himself.*
2. **Mīles ipse laudātus est,** *the soldier himself was praised.*
3. **Ipse manēbō,** *I myself will remain.*
4. **Mulier epistulam ipsam legit,** *the woman reads the letter itself,* or, *the very letter.*

209. VOCABULARY.

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, (**con** *and* **mittō**), entrust; **committere proelium,** engage in battle.
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, protect, defend.
domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home.
īdem, eadem, idem, same.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self.
is, ea, id, that, this.
barbarus, -ī, *m.*, barbarian.
diū, *adv.*, long, a long time.
tam, *adv.*, so.

210. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hostēs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt, pācemque ab eō petunt. 2. Centuriō salūtem suam explōrātōribus

Gallōrum commīsit. 3. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent, idem Caesar facit. 4. Cūr Cicerō ipse suās ōrātiōnēs tam saepe laudāvit? 5. Titum et frātrem ēius obsidēs dux Helvētiōrum pōstulāverat. 6. Nōnne tū ipse et frāter tuus in urbe mēcum paucōs diēs manēbitis? 7. Caesar et Labiēnus in eundem locum properāverant et ūnō tempore proelium cum Belgīs commīsērunt. 8. Lēgātus ipse perītissimus reī mīlitāris habitus est. 9. Rōmānī ab iniūriā barbarōrum patriam diū dēfendērunt. 10. Hī barbarī ab impetū hostium domōs suās ācriter dēfendent. 11. Mihi mea domus, tibi tua est cāra. 12. Initium hūius librī est facilius quam extrēma pars.

II. 1. The Belgians and the Helvetians did not live in the same part of Gaul. 2. That speech of yours was pleasing to many citizens. 3. The army will be led away from the winter quarters in a few days. 4. We saw that man in the city. 5. Cicero had great influence in those regions. 6. No one of this legion withdrew from the standards. 7. Why do you remain so long in this city? 8. These boys will assist their father in his daily toil. 9. The general himself and many of his men (soldiers) were wounded. 10. We had expected the ambassador and his son a long time. 11. Many illustrious men have lived in this city. 12. Why do you say these things to me?

211. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, I. 16, 17.]

Caesaris cōpiae frūmentum nōn habēbant. Aeduī id nōn dabant, nam (*for*) propter tempus annī frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. Aeduī cottīdiē dīcēbant "frūmentum dabimus," sed nōn dabant. Propter hōc īrātus

(*being angry*) Caesar prīncipēs eōrum convocāvit et graviter eōs accūsāvit. Liscus (*a man's name*), prīnceps Aeduōrum Caesarī dīxit: "Cīvium Aeduōrum nōnnūllī (*some*) auctōritāte plūs valent quam ipsī prīncipēs. Hī malā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrent (*deter*) nē (*that not*) frūmentum dent (*give*, subjunctive of *dō*).[1] Hī dīcunt: 'sī (*if*) Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāverint, Aeduīs[2] et omnibus Gallīs[2] lībertātem ēripient (*will take away*).' Ab eīsdem vestra cōnsilia (*plans*) hostibus ēnūntiantur (*are reported*). Hās rēs māgnō cum perīculō (*danger*) tibi ēnūntiō, et ob (*on account of, for*) eam causam diū tacuī (*kept silent*)."

CHAPTER XXXIX.

Fourth Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.

Relative Pronoun.

212. Learn the present indicative active of audiō (p. 214).

213. PARADIGM.

quī, *who, which.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

[1] **nē . . . dent**, *that they give not*, i.e. *from giving.*

[2] Dative, but translate *from.*

214. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Ego quī haec scrīpsī homō sum,** *I who wrote this am a man.*
2. **Urbs quam vidēs māgna est,** *the city which you see is large.*
3. **Puerī quōs vidētis dīscipulī meī sunt,** *the boys whom you see are my pupils.*

Observe that the relative has the same gender, number, and person as the word (called the antecedent) to which it refers, but that its case is determined by its relation to the other words of the clause in which it stands. *Quī* in the first sentence, while it has no separate form to show its person, is nevertheless of the first person, and so the verb which agrees with it is in the first person.

215. RULE. — *A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.*

216. VOCABULARY.

vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice.
reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of.
audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear.
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, spend the winter.
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, fortify.
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come.
quī, quae, quod, who, which.
quam, *adv.*, as; **tam . . . quam,** so . . . as.

217. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nōn is bonus est quī sē ipse laudat, sed is quem optimī hominēs laudant. 2. Dux, quī hiemāverat in Ītaliā, prīmā aestāte in Britanniam vēnit. 3. Locum ubi hiemābit exercitus noster mūnīmus. 4. Libenter vōcem meī amīcī Mārcī semper audiō. 5. Helvētiī eō tempore quō Caesar in Galliam vēnit ad flūmen Rhēnum incolēbant.

6. Nēmō reī mīlitāris perītior quam Hannibal fuit. 7. Domus amīcōrum quibuscum[1] hiemō multīs pictūrīs ōrnātur. 8. Ea pars Galliae quam Belgae obtinent ā fīnibus Gallōrum ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinet. 9. Quī ā multīs timētur, ipse multōs timēbit. 10. Nōnne audīs ea quae dīcō? 11. Initium itineris nōn est tam difficile quam reliqua pars.

II. 1. The same things are not easy for all men. 2. Many barbarians used to live in this region where we are. 3. I shall read with pleasure the orations which you gave me. 4. Those soldiers of yours always engage in battle bravely. 5. Cicero in the oration which I am reading, praises himself. 6. These barbarians are very skilful in the art of war. 7. The Roman legions used to defend their standards with the utmost valor. 8. The beginning of the book which I gave you is easy. 9. Dumnorix and his cavalry begin[2] the battle. 10. Shall you remain long in Greece? 11. The winter quarters which the legion is fortifying are in the territory of the Sequanians.

---

[1] See **192.** 4, at the end. [2] *Make a beginning of.*

CHAPTER XL.

Fourth Conjugation: Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active.

Interrogative Pronoun.

218. Learn the imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, aud future-perfect of the indicative active of audiō.

Compare the endings of each tense with the endings of the same tense of dūcō.

In what tenses is there a difference? In what does the difference consist?

219. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Audit, audiēbat, audiet. 2. Vēnit, vēnerat, vēnerit. 3. Audīvī, audīveram, audīverō. 4. Mūnit, mūniet, mūnīvit. 5. Barbarus in Ītaliam vēnit. 6. Vōcemne audīs? 7. Lēgātus mūrō hīberna mūniet. 8. Eadem audīvērunt. 9. Quō diē veniētis? 10. Quid dīcis, dīcēs, dīxistī?

II. 1. You hear, you were hearing. 2. They will fortify, they have fortified. 3. We were coming, we had come. 4. He will protect, he has protected. 5. Whose voice do you hear? 6. The soldiers will fortify this place. 7. They will come to the city. 8. Whose speech did they hear? 9. We will defend our home. 10. They are coming from the winter quarters.

Interrogative Pronoun.

220. PARADIGM.

quīs, *who? which? what?*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	**quis**	**quae**	**quid**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
G.	**cūius**	**cūius**	**cūius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
D.	**cuī**	**cuī**	**cuī**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Ac.	**quem**	**quam**	**quid**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Ab.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

When the interrogative is used as an adjective, it usually has the same form as the relative.

221. VOCABULARY.

genus, -eris, *n.*, kind, sort.
mercātor, -ōris, *m.*, merchant.
numerus, -ī, *m.*, number.
senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate.
quis, quae, quid, who, what.
pūblicus, -a, -um, public.
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call.
consīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sēssum, take a position, encamp.
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, (**dis** *and* **mittō**), send away, dismiss.

222. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mīlle cīvēs vōcem cōnsulis audiēbant. 2. Quid ex tuō frātre dē adventū Germānōrum audīvistī? 3. In Graeciā et in Ītaliā urbēs multae et nōbilēs sunt. 4. Caesar tertiae legiōnī salūtem suam commīsit. 5. Quibus ex regiōnibus eī mercātōrēs vēnērunt? 6. Quae arborum genera in pūblicīs hortīs vīdistī? 7. Nūntiī ā senātū in multās regiōnēs dīmissī sunt. 8. Hominēs quī Belgae appellābantur, ūnam Galliae partem incolēbant. 9. Cum tribus legiōnibus et māgnō equitum numerō proelium commīsit. 10. Ubi hostium cōpiae consēdērunt? 11. Cas-

ticus, cūius pater amīcus populī Rōmānī fuerat, rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupābat. 12. Ego in Graeciā reliquam hiemis partem manēbō.

II. 1. Who of you will read Cicero's orations? 2. The same storm which kept us in port drove many ships upon the shore. 3. We will come into the city by the shortest route. 4. Marcus will be glad to hear the voice of his friend. 5. That little girl whose voice you hear is very unhappy. 6. In what district do they live? 7. What towns have the enemy fortified? 8. The Gauls were called barbarians by the Romans. 9. The home of that merchant is on the bank of the Rhine. 10. The province had for a long time been protected by the tenth legion. 11. Cæsar himself wrote a letter to Cicero.

223. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, I. 18.]

Hanc ōrātiōnem dē Dumnōrīge, Divitiacī frātre, Liscus dīxerat. Caesar celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet (*retains*). Quaerit (*he asks*) ex eō sōlō ea quae in conciliō dīxerat. Eadem ab aliīs quaerit. Vēra erant. Dumnorīx ipse summā erat audāciā (*boldness*), māgnā apud plebem (*the common people*) auctōritāte, Rōmānīs nōn amīcus. Multōs annōs omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia redempta (*bought up*) habēbat. Māgnum numerum equitum semper circum (*about, around*) sē habēbat et apud aliās cīvitātēs māgnam auctōritātem habēbat. Māter ēius uxor erat hominis in Biturigibus (*the Bituriges*, a Gallic tribe) nōbilissimī; ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēbat. Ob (*on account of*) eam rem Helvētiīs amīcus erat.

In proeliō equestrī (*cavalry*, adj.) quod paucīs diēbus ante factum erat (*had been made*, i.e. *fought*) initium fugae ā Dumnorīge et suīs equitibus factum erat. Eōrum fugā reliquī equitēs territī erant.

CHAPTER XLI.

Fourth Conjugation: Passive Voice.

Indefinite Pronouns.

224. Learn the indicative passive of audiō. Compare the endings of each tense with the endings of the same tense of dūcō, and observe the differences.

225. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Vōx cōnsulis in senātū audīta est, audiētur, audiēbātur. 2. Cūius vōx audītur, audīta erat, audīta erit? 3. Quā ex urbe venīs, veniēbās, vēnerās? 4. Illud oppidum mūnītur, mūniētur, mūnītum est. 5. Cicerōnis ōrātiōnem audiēmus, audīvimus, audīverāmus. 6. Vōcēs multōrum audītae sunt, audiēbantur, audientur. 7. Cūr veniunt, veniēbant, vēnērunt? 8. Eadem in senātū dicta sunt.

II. 1. In what city do we live, shall we live, have we lived? 2. We have come to this city, shall come, were coming. 3. The winter quarters will be fortified, were being fortified, have been fortified. 4. What did you

hear, whom did you hear? 5. What was heard, who was heard? 6. What place is being fortified, has been fortified? 7. In what place will the army spend the winter? 8. The shouts of the children will be heard.

226. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The following are the more important indefinite pronouns: —

1.	Substantive	**aliquis,**	**aliquae** (**aliqua**),	**aliquid,**	*somebody, some one, something.*
		quis,	**quae** (**qua**),	**quid,**	
	Adjective	**aliquī,**	**aliqua** (**aliquae**),	**aliquod,**	*some, any.*
		quī,	**qua** (**quae**),	**quod,**	
2.	**quisquam,** ——		**quidquam** (no plural), *any one.*		
3.	**quīdam,**	**quaedam,**	**quiddam** (**quoddam**), *a, a certain.*		
4.	**quisque,**	**quaeque,**	**quidque** (**quodque**), *each, every.*		
5.	**ūllus,**	**ūlla,**	**ūllum,** *any.*		

These pronouns, except ūllus, are declined like the interrogative or the relative. Where there are two forms, the one like the interrogative is used as a noun, the one like the relative as an adjective, but this distinction is not always observed, except in the neuter. The neuter plural of aliquī is generally aliqua, of quī indefinite quae or qua. In the declension of quīdam, *m* becomes *n* before *d*, as, quendam, quōrundam.

The indefinite quis and quī are used chiefly after sī, nisi, nē, and num, and will be introduced later in connection with these particles.

Quisquam is used chiefly in negative sentences, and in sentences (chiefly interrogative) implying a negative.

227. VOCABULARY.

captīvus, -ī, *m.*, captive.
colloquium, -ī, *n.*, conference.
aliquis, -quae (-qua), -quid, somebody, something.
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, a certain.
quis, qua (quae), quid, somebody, something.
quisque, quaeque, quidque, every one.
quisquam, . . . quidquam, somebody, something.
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum (dē *and* legō), pick from, select.
reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, find out.
neque, *conj.*, and not.
neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.

228. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Eadem dē Dumnorīge quisque apud mē dīxit. 2. Quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis nocte ad Caesarem vēnit. 3. Locum aliquem colloquiō idōneum dēligent. 4. Prīmum quisque itineris locum petēbat. 5. Ex captīvō quōdam proximum iter in oppidum repertum est. 6. Cūr quisquam illōs barbarōs timet? 7. Quāque hieme amīcī quīdam patris meī in urbem veniēbant. 8. Quī vestrum rosās in hortīs pūblicīs vīdērunt? 9. Vōx magistrī ā quōque nostrum audīta est. 10. Locus quem dux dēlēgit paucīs diēbus mūniētur. 11. In prōvinciam mīsit equitēs, sed reliquum exercitum in hīberna dūxit. 12. Multa arborum genera sunt in eā silvā.

II. 1. Some friends of mine are spending the winter in Greece and Italy. 2. In the winter we live in a large and celebrated city. 3. He will encamp every night four miles from the enemy. 4. I saw certain boys in the city last night. 5. The number of inhabitants of this city is very large. 6. Cæsar's daughter was called Julia. 7. He had not heard about the arrival of Ariovistus, nor

was anything found out from the captives. 8. The voice of my mother was heard at dawn. 9. Many merchants used to come into Gaul every summer. 10. We dismissed every pupil before night on account of the weather. 11. Certain captives were led into the senate.

CHAPTER XLII.

Infinitives of Sum; Infinitives of First and Second Conjugations.

Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Oblīqua); Subject of the Infinitive.

229. Learn the infinitives of **sum** (p. 222), and the infinitives, both active and passive, of **amō** and **habeō**.

The present infinitive has already been introduced in sentences in which it is used in Latin just as in English, and required no explanation; as, —

Helvētiī parātī erant obsidēs dare,
Properat in altiōrem locum castra movēre.

230. For a different use of the infinitive, examine the following sentences: —

DIRECT. **Puer parat,** *the boy is preparing.*
INDIRECT. **Dīcō puerum parāre,** *I say that the boy is preparing.*
DIRECT. **Locus parātus est,** *the place has been prepared.*

INDIRECT. **Putō locum parātum esse,** *I think that the place has been prepared.*

DIRECT. **Puer parābit,** *the boy will (is going to) prepare.*

INDIRECT. **Videō puerum parātūrum esse,** *I see that the boy will (is going to) prepare.*

Observe that the sentences marked INDIRECT contain the same statements as the corresponding sentences marked DIRECT, but that in the sentences marked INDIRECT the statements are attributed to some speaker or observer. A statement thus attributed to any one, and not directly quoted, is called an *Indirect* statement, or a statement in *Indirect Discourse*.

In English, statements in Indirect Discourse are introduced by the conjunction *that* (which may sometimes be omitted), the subject is in the Nominative (Subjective) case, and the verb in the Indicative mood. In Latin, statements in Indirect Discourse are not introduced by a conjunction, the subject is in the Accusative case, and the verb in the Infinitive.

231. RULE. — *The subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.*

232. RULE. — *Statements after verbs (and other expressions) of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving are expressed by the Infinitive with Subject-Accusative.*

233. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

PRESENT.

dīcit / dīcet / dīxit **puerum parāre,** — *he says that the boy is preparing. / he will say that the boy is preparing. / he said that the boy was preparing.*

dīcit / dīcet / dīxit **locum parārī,** — *he says that the place is being prepared. / he will say that the place is being prepared. / he said that the place was being prepared.*

PERFECT.

dīcit **dīcet** **dīxit**	**puerum parā-vīsse,**	*he says that the boy has prepared.* *he will say that the boy has prepared.* *he said that the boy had prepared.*
dīcit **dīcet** **dīxit**	**locum parātum esse,**	*he says that the place has been prepared.* *he will say that the place has been prepared.* *he said that the place had been prepared.*

FUTURE.

dīcit **dīcet** **dīxit**	**puerum parātū-rum esse,**	*he says that the boy will prepare.* *he will say that the boy will prepare.* *he said that the boy would (was going to) prepare.*
dīcit **dīcet** **dīxit**	**locum parātum īrī,**[1]	*he says that the place will be prepared.* *he will say that the place will be prepared.* *he said that the place would (was going to) be prepared.*

Observe that in the first six sentences the preparing takes place at the same time as the saying, in the second six at a time before (past to) the saying, in the third six at a time after (future to) the saying.

234. RULE. — *In Indirect Discourse the Present Infinitive is used to represent an action as going on; the Perfect, as completed; the Future, as in the future relatively to the time denoted by the verb of saying.*

235. VOCABULARY.

Athēnae, -ārum, *f.*, Athens.
Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome.
cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, assert, encourage.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, report.
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think.
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsum, reply.
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know.

[1] A more usual form for the future passive infinitive is **fore** (a future infinitive of **sum**) **ut** and the subjunctive. See **387**.

236. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Impetūs hostium sustinēre nōn est facile. 2. Imperātor scit mīlitēs domōs nostrās occupāre. 3. Omnēs sciunt Rōmam et Athēnās fuisse nōbilissimās urbēs. 4. Dumnorīx neque in colloquium veniet neque exercitum dīmittet. 5. Casticus cōnfīrmat sē prōvinciam occupātūrum esse. 6. Captīvī putāvērunt exercitūs adventū incolās territōs esse. 7. Dīcit aliquis portum nāvibus longīs complētum īrī. 8. Nūntiābātur exercitum locō[1] proeliō idōneō cōnsēdisse. 9. Repperit prīncipēs Aeduōrum in Britanniam properāvisse. 10. Cicerō respondit sē posterō diē senātum convocātūrum esse. 11. Hortus pūblicus mulieribus āc līberīs complētus est.

II. 1. Who says that the route through the province is easy? 2. The general has already selected a certain man as his lieutenant. 3. Does not everyone know that our slaves have been set free? 4. The merchant reported that the Gauls were men of great stature. 5. My mother knows that neither you nor I are strong. 6. The farmer ascertained that a large number of his horses were standing in the water. 7. Who says that boys like to toil? 8. My daughter says in her letter that she will be in the city in a few days. 9. I did not know that Cæsar had called Divitiacus to a conference. 10. Marcus is not in the garden, nor has anyone of us seen him.

237. READING LESSON.

[Cæsar, *Gallic War*, Book I. 19–21.]

Caesar Divitiacum, Dumnorīgis frātrem, quī populī Rōmānī amīcus erat, ad sē vocāvit, et dē Dumnorīge multa

[1] The preposition *in* is frequently omitted with **locō**.

dīxit. Petīvit ut (*that*) sine (*without*, takes the abl.) ēius offēnsiōne (*offence*) animī Dumnorīgem pūnīret (*might punish*). Divitiacus ā Caesare petīvit nē (*that . . . not*) Dumnorīgem pūnīret. Caesar Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat. Dīcit sē eī vītam (*life*) dare; tamen (*nevertheless*) cūstōdēs eī pōnit (*places*). Eōdem diē Caesarī ab explōrātōribus nūntiātur hostēs sub (*under, at the foot of*) monte cōnsēdisse (perfect infinitive of *cōnsīdō*) mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō. Iter in montem facile esse nūntiātur. Tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant (*knew*) montem āscendere (*to ascend*) iubet (*orders*). Ipse quārtā vigiliā, eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant (*had gone*) ad eōs contendit (*hastens*). Pūblius Cōnsidius cum explōrātōribus praemittitur (*is sent ahead*).

CHAPTER XLIII.

Infinitives of Third and Fourth Conjugations.

Expressions of Place.

238. Learn the infinitives, active and passive, of dūcō and audiō.

Notice the stems and endings.

Give the infinitives, active and passive, of legō, scrībō, petō, mūniō, reperiō, sciō.

239. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Expressions of Place.

1. **Mīlitēs in oppidō sunt,** *the soldiers are in the town.*
2. **Mīlitēs ad montem vēnērunt,** *the soldiers came to the mountain.*
3. **Mīlitēs ē prōvinciā vēnērunt,** *the soldiers came from the province.*
4. **Mīlitēs Rōmae sunt,** *the soldiers are at Rome.*
5. **Mīlitēs Athēnīs sunt,** *the soldiers are at Athens.*
6. **Mīlitēs Rōmam vēnērūnt,** *the soldiers came to Rome.*
7. **Mīlitēs Rōmā vēnērunt,** *the soldiers came from Rome.*

Notice that, in 1, the place *where* (or *in which*) is expressed by a preposition with the ablative case; in 2, the place *whither* (or *to which*) by a preposition with the accusative; and in 3, the place *whence* (or *from which*) by a preposition with the ablative.

Notice that with names of cities (4–7) no preposition is used, and that place *where* is expressed by the Locative case.

In the singular of the first and second declensions the locative case is like the genitive. Elsewhere it is like the ablative. **Domus** has a locative **domī**, *at home*, and **rūs** has **rūrī**, *in the country*.

240. RULE. — *With names of cities and towns:* —

I. *Place where is expressed by the locative.*

II. *Place whither by the accusative* without *a preposition.*

III. *Place whence by the ablative* without *a preposition.*

Domus, *home*, and **rūs**, *country*, in expressions of place are used like names of cities.

241. VOCABULARY.

collis, -is, *m.* (*decl. like* **ignis**), hill.
Corinthus, -ī, *f.*, Corinth.
Massilia, -ae, *f.*, Massilia.
occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, kill.
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place, pitch (of a camp).
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, (**con** *and* **veniō**) come together, assemble.
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, (**ē** *and* **dūcō**), lead out *or* away.
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, (**in-** and **pēs**), hinder, impede.

242. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Explōrātōrēs nūntiāvērunt castra in colle pōnī. 2. Nūntiat aliquis multōs cīvēs Athēnīs occīsōs esse. 3. Dīcit quīdam nostrās cōpiās omnēs Corinthum conventūrās esse. 4. Dīcēbāsne tuum frātrem Massiliā vēnisse? 5. Imperātor scīvit mulierem quamque mittī ex oppidō. 6. Ex explōrātōribus repperī Hannibalem ex castrīs exercitum suum ēdūxisse. 7. Nūntiātur Caesarem in rīpā Rhodanī castra posuisse. 8. Senātus nōn putābat Caesarem Rōmam ventūrum esse. 9. Ex captīvīs repertum est ūnum ē fīliīs Ariovistī occīsum esse. 10. Lēgātus respondit iter impetū equitum hostium impedītum esse.

II. 1. He said that neither the farmer nor his son had come home. 2. He had dwelt at Rome many years. 3. We thought that you would come to Rome with your mother. 4. It was easy to fortify the hill on which the camp had been pitched. 5. She said that she had written a letter to a friend in Athens. 6. Divitiacus asserted that he had always been a friend to the Romans. 7. We found out that the captives had been led away to a fortified place. 8. Ariovistus replied to the ambassadors that he would neither come to a conference nor withdraw from

Gaul. 9. The general selected from his troops a certain young man as guide. 10. We knew that you had lived a long time at Massilia.

CHAPTER XLIV.

Verbs in -io of the Third Conjugation.

243. Learn the indicative and infinitive moods, active and passive, of capiō (p. 217).

Of which conjugation is capiō? Why?

Compare each tense with the same tense of dūcō and note the differences in formation, if there are any.

Like capiō, conjugate all the verbs in -iō in **244.**

244. VOCABULARY.

medius, -a, -um, middle of.
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, capture.
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make.
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum, flee.
instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up.
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw.
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back; **sē recipere**, retreat.
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, slay.
statim, *adv.*, immediately.

245. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Capiunt, capiminī, capiēbāmur. 2. Iacis, iaciēs, iaciēbās. 3. Iacitur, iaciētur, iaciēbātur. 4. Fugiēmus Corinthō. 5. Fugiēbāmus ab urbe. 6. Fugiēbant Massiliā. 7. Parātī erant iter facere. 8. In collem sē recipient. 9. Multī dē nostrīs captī sunt. 10. Putat omnēs interfectōs esse.

II. 1. We are throwing, we shall throw. 2. We shall be taken, they have been taken. 3. We shall make a journey to Rome. 4. They were fleeing to the camp. 5. They throw stones from the wall. 6. Many were being slain at Rome. 7. He reports that the town has been taken. 8. The old men will remain at home. 9. They were marching from home. 10. Stones were thrown by the boys.

246. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mīlitēs māgnā caede oppidum cēpērunt. 2. Hostēs in omnēs partēs fugiēbant. 3. Duae fīliae fuērunt Ariovistō; hārum altera occīsa est, altera capta est. 4. Statim nūntiat mīlitēs ad montem sē recipere. 5. Nostrī pīla iaciēbant et in castra sē recipiēbant. 6. Caesar respondet Labiēnum cōpiās ē castrīs ēdūcere et in mediō[1] colle aciem īnstrūctūrum esse. 7. Poētae[2] erat in animō Rōmā iter facere Athēnās. 8. Urbs capta est et multī incolae interfectī sunt. 9. Nūntiat castra apud Genāvam posita esse. 10. Quot hominēs Massiliae occīsī sunt? 11. Pater tuus, quī in urbe est, tē domum missum esse nōn scit.

II. 1. He knows that you were often in Corinth. 2. The scouts assembled at dawn, and immediately departed from the camp. 3. Do you think that the enemy will retire to a fortified place? 4. They reported that a line of battle had been drawn up on the middle of the hill. 5. He told the citizens that very many captives were taken in that battle. 6. The general asserted that he would at once take Corinth. 7. I was at home neither

[1] *On the middle of*, i.e. *half-way up.* [2] See **49.**

last night nor the night before. 8. The boys, who threw the stones, have fled. 9. The troops will quickly retire to the nearest hill. 10. The messenger said that he had been hindered at the river.

247. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, Book I. 22–23.]

Prīmā lūce summus (*highest*, i.e. *the top of*) mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur, Caesar ipse ab hostium castrīs mīlle et quīngentīs passibus aberat (*was distant*). Tum (*then*) Cōnsidius ad Caesarem vēnit, dīxit montem ab hostibus tenērī. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem dūxit, aciem īnstrūxit. Labiēnus, quī montem occupāverat, nostrōs exspectābat suāsque legiōnēs ā proeliō continēbat. Multō diē[1] Caesarī per explōrātōrēs nūntiātum est et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium propter timōrem (*fear*) falsa (*false things*) sibi nūntiāvisse. Eō diē Caesar cum cōpiīs suīs iter fēcit et mīlia passuum tria ab hostium castrīs castra posuit. Posterō diē Caesar ad oppidum Aeduōrum māximum, Bibracte, quod mīlia passuum duodēvigintī aberat (*was distant*) iter facere cōnstituit (*determined*), ubi cōpiam frūmentī esse putāvit. Helvētiī Rōmānōs territōs (*frightened*) fugere putāvērunt. Itaque (*therefore*) iter convertērunt (*they turned*) et in novissimum nostrum āgmen multōs impetūs faciēbant.

---

[1] **multō diē**, *at much day*, i.e. *when the day was far advanced.*

CHAPTER XLV.

Participles.

248. Learn all the participles, active and passive, of amō, habeō, dūcō, audiō, and capiō; also of sum. Note the stems and endings.

Observe that there is no present passive nor perfect active participle.

Participles ending in -ns are declined like potēns. See p. 56. Those ending in -us are declined like bonus. See p. 18.

249. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Hostēs pūgnantēs per urbem currēbant,** *the enemy ran fighting through the city.*
2. **Multōs in urbe occīsōs vidēbat,** *he saw many who had been slain in the city* (literally, *many having been slain*, or, *many slain*).
3. **Epistulam scrīptam ad amīcum mīsit,** *he wrote a letter and sent it to his friend* (literally, *he sent a letter having been written*, or, *a written letter to his friend*).
4. **Eum domī manentem saepe vidēbam,** *I often saw him while he was remaining at home* (literally, *him remaining at home*).
5. **Mīles graviter vulnerātus fortiter pūgnāvit,** *although severely wounded, the soldier fought bravely* (literally, *the soldier, having been severely wounded, fought bravely*).
6. **Servus līberātus erit laetus,** *the slave, if liberated, will be glad* (literally, *the slave, having been liberated, will be glad*).

7. **Hīs rēbus mōtī proelium committēbant,** *because they were influenced by these considerations they joined battle* (literally, *moved by these considerations, they joined battle*).

Observe (1) that the participles in the above sentences agree with nouns or pronouns in gender, number, and case, like other adjectives; (2) that the present participle represents an action as going on, and the perfect participle action as completed, with reference to the time denoted by the leading verb; (3) that most of the participles are equivalent to clauses in English. Before translation, ascertain the precise idea expressed by the participle.

The use of the future active participle and the gerundive (sometimes called the future passive participle) is confined for the most part to special constructions, which will be considered in a subsequent chapter.

250. VOCABULARY.

arma, -ōrum, *n.*, arms.
dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender.
inopia, -ae, *f.*, want.
iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, (**iūs** *and* **iūrandum**), oath.
tēlum, -ī, *n.*, weapon, missile.
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, collect, compel.
addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, (**ad** *and* **dūcō**), lead to, induce.
ob (*prep. with acc.*), on account of.

251. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Agricolam equōs ad flūmen agentem vīdimus. 2. Cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs cōgēbat. 3. Ē locō superiōre in nostrōs (mīlitēs) venientēs tēla iaciēbant. 4. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. 5. Centuriō fortissimē pūgnāns interficiēbātur. 6. Ab hostibus captī statim interficiēmur. 7. Hāc ōrātiōne

adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant. 8. Legiōnēs sē armīs dēfendentēs in collem sē recēpērunt. 9. Oppidum nātūrā āc manū mūnītum expūgnātum est. 10. Equitēs impedītī in flūmine occīsī sunt. 11. Ariovistus iūreiūrandō tenērī nōn coāctus est. 12. Cōnsēderat cum omnibus copiīs quae ē multīs cīvitātibus coāctae erant.

II. 1. The boy saw his sister writing a letter. 2. Cæsar, as he was influenced by these considerations, pitched his camp on the middle of the hill. 3. The Belgæ, although they fought bravely, were slain. 4. The men, if frightened, will soon flee. 5. Will you come to Corinth? 6. Influenced by a lack of grain and other supplies, we shall surrender (make a surrender). 7. He has troops collected from many states. 8. Did you say that Labienus drew up a line of battle? 9. The enemy threw their missiles and retired. 10. We saw your brother as he came home. 11. On account of these things the troops were led out of the camp. 12. They had many arms concealed in the town.

CHAPTER XLVI.

Deponent Verbs.

252. Deponent verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning. They are conjugated like the passive of other verbs, except that the future infinitive has the active form (mīrātūrus esse, not mīrātum īrī), and they have the participles of both voices.

mīrāns, *admiring.* **mīrātus**, *having admired.*
mīrātūrus, *about to admire.* **mīrandus**, *to be admired.*

The perfect participle is usually active in meaning, but the gerundive is always passive.

253. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Mīles gladiō ūtitur**, *the soldier uses his sword.*
2. **Caesar urbe potītus est**, *Cæsar got possession of the city.*

Observe that *gladiō* is used with *ūtitur*, and *urbe* with *potītus est.*

A few other verbs are followed by the ablative.

254. RULE. — *The deponents* ***ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,*** *and* ***vescor*** *and their compounds govern the ablative.*

255. VOCABULARY.

angustiae, **-ārum**, *f.*, narrow pass, narrowness.
impedīmenta, **-ōrum**, *n.*, baggage.
mīror, **-ārī**, **-ātus**, admire, wonder at.
sequor, **sequī**, **secūtus**, follow.
vereor, **verērī**, **veritus**, fear.
ūtor, **ūtī**, **ūsus**, use.
fruor, **fruī**, **frūctus**, enjoy.
fungor, **fungī**, **fūnctus**, perform.
potior, **potīrī**, **potītus**, get possession of.
vescor, **vescī**, eat.

256. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nōn hostem sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum verēmur. 2. Bonīs librīs semper fruímur. 3. Nostrī impedīmentīs castrīsque potītī sunt. 4. Mercātor corporum māgnitūdinem Gallōrum mīrābātur. 5. Caesar hostēs fugientēs secūtus multōs interfēcit. 6. Ob eam rem mīlitēs gladiīs facilius ūtēbantur. 7. Dīcunt ducem hostēs māgnā celeritāte secūtum esse. 8. Barbarī

tōtā urbe potītī erant. 9. In prōvinciā multīs rēbus fruēbāmur. 10. Dux māgnam multitūdinem peditum ex agrīs coēgit. 11. Equī frūmentō vescuntur. 12. Mārcus labōre fungitur.

II. 1. The Helvetians and Sequanians give an oath to each other.[1] 2. The general drew up a line of battle before the camp. 3. Many of the inhabitants were killed as they were retiring into the town. 4. Did you see the boy who threw the stone? 5. The commander divided among his soldiers the arms which were captured. 6. The enemy threw their missiles and fled into the woods. 7. Whose book did you use? 8. The general, after having followed the Helvetians many days, took possession of their camp. 9. No one enjoys extreme want. 10. The soldier said at once that he did not fear the enemy. 11. Eagles eat small animals. 12. The soldiers finished (performed) their toil and withdrew.

257. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, Book I. 24–26.]

Postquam (*after*) id nūntiātum est, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem dūxit equitēsque contrā hostēs mīsit. Ipse in colle mediō aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor et in summō (*the top of*) colle duās legiōnēs et omnia auxilia (*auxiliaries*) posuit, āc tōtum montem hominibus complēvit. Helvētiī, quī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī erant, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt (*brought together*); ipsī nostrōs equitēs superāvērunt et ad prīmam nostram aciem vēnērunt. Caesar celeriter proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīla mīsērunt quibus

[1] Cf. 251. I. 7.

facile hostium aciem perfrēgērunt (*broke through*). Tum (*then*) gladiīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallī diū fortiter pūgnāvērunt; tandem (*at length*) in montem quī suberat (*was near*) sē recēpērunt. In itinere et ad montem diū et ācriter pūgnātum est. Tandem impedīmentīs castrīsque Helvētiōrum nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi (*there*) Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Helvētiōrum circiter centum et trīgintā ex eō proeliō fūgērunt, et quārtō diē in fīnēs Lingonum (*of the Lingonēs*) vēnērunt.

CHAPTER XLVII.

Possum: Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse.

258. Learn the indicative and the infinitive moods of possum (p. 222).

259. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Laudārī est grātum,** *to be praised is pleasant;* or, *it is pleasant to be praised.*
2. **Vidērī nōn est semper esse,** *seeming* (*to seem*) *is not always being* (*to be*).

Observe that *laudārī* (in 1) and *vidērī* (in 2) are subjects, and that *esse* (in 2) is a predicate. This use of the infinitive is common to both English and Latin, but more common in Latin.

260. RULE. — *An infinitive with or without a subject-accusative may be used as the subject of a sentence or as a predicate noun.*

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

261. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Pūgnāre nōn potest,** *he cannot fight.*
2. **Pūgnāre nōn poterat,** *he could not fight.*
3. **Pūgnāre parābant,** *they were preparing to fight.*

Observe that the infinitive *pūgnāre* is used with *potest*, *poterat*, and *parābant* not as subject, but to complete the thought. This use of the infinitive also is common to English and Latin.

Such an infinitive is called a *complementary infinitive.*

262. RULE. — *The infinitive is used with certain verbs to complete their meaning.*

Remember that *can* and *could* should usually be expressed by some form of *possum.*

263. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Nihil vidēre potest. 2. Vēlōciter currere potes. 3. Iuvāre mē nōn poterat. 4. Stāre nōn potuit. 5. Sōlī multa reperīre potuerāmus. 6. Impedīmenta capere potuērunt. 7. Parātus est domum venīre. 8. Properābam tē vocāre. 9. Coāctī sunt sē recipere.

II. 1. I am able to conceal nothing. 2. He could not use his foot. 3. We shall not be able to come. 4. He hurried to assist us. 5. I am ready to follow you. 6. We could not read. 7. He will not be able to run. 8. They could not retreat.

264. VOCABULARY.

amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.
perīculum, -ī, *n.*, danger.
praesidium, -ī, *n.*, guard, protection, escort.
socius, -ī, *m.*, ally.
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum, fall.
iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum, command.
polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus, promise.
possum, posse, potuī, be able.
sine (*prep. with abl.*), without.

265. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar oppidō potīrī nōn potuit. 2. Mīlitēs armīs ūtī nōn potuērunt. 3. Sociīs praesidium pollicērī nōn potuerat. 4. In colle equitēs equīs ūtī nōn potuērunt. 5. Paucī dē nostrīs hostēs secūtī proeliō cecidērunt. 6. Nōnne scītis mē inter vōs omnia tēla dīvīsisse? 7. Sine perīculō per angustiās iter facere nōn possumus. 8. Eam ob rem vōbīscum dē dēditiōne agere nōn poterimus. 9. Vīdistīne Cicerōnis dē amīcitiā librum? 10. Rem pūblicam[1] in māgnō perīculō esse cōnsul putat. 11. Caesar prīncipēs obsidēs ad sē addūcere iūssit. 12. Mīlitum labōre centuriōnēs fūnctī sunt. 13. Inopiā addūctī hominēs equīs vescuntur.

II. 1. He says that he is not afraid of you. 2. We could see the baggage of the enemy. 3. The state could not be bound by an oath. 4. Influenced by want, we hurry into the territory of our allies. 5. The consul promised[2] to protect his allies from wrongs. 6. The general could not come to Rome without a guard. 7. The commander-in-chief ordered a band of men to be collected from the country districts (*agrī*). 8. You enjoy the friendship of all good citizens. 9. We made an attack upon the camp, and many brave men fell. 10. The barbarians were astonished at the size of our ships.

---

[1] **Rēs pūblica**, *public thing, state.*

[2] **Polliceor** is usually followed by future infinitive, *i.e.*, the indirect discourse, but sometimes by the complementary infinitive.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

Compounds of Sum.

Dative with Compounds.

266. Learn the indicative and infinitive moods of prōsum (p. 223).

The peculiarities of compounds of **sum**, except **possum** and **prōsum**, will be readily learned from the vocabulary.

267. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **In perīculīs amīcīs aderat**, *he aided his friends in dangers.*
2. **Dumnorīx equitibus praefuit**, *Dumnorix commanded the cavalry.*
3. **Līberōs amīcīs committēbant**, *they were entrusting their children to their friends.*

Notice that the verbs of the above sentences are compounded with *ad*, *prae*, and *con*, and that they govern the dative case.

268. RULE. — *Many verbs compounded with* ***ad***, ***ante***, ***con***, ***in***, ***inter***, ***ob***, ***post***, ***prae***, ***prō***, ***sub***, *and* ***super*** *govern the dative as indirect object.*

The dative is used with all compounds of *sum* except *possum* and *absum*.

269. VOCABULARY.

auxilium, **-ī**, *n.*, help, assistance.
Brūtus, **-ī**, *m.*, Brutus.
vērus, **-a**, **-um**, true.
absum, **-esse**, **āfuī**, (**ab** *and* **sum**), be absent, away, distant.
adsum, **-esse**, **-fuī**, (**ad** *and* **sum**), be present, assist.
accidō, **-ere**, **-cidī**, (**ad** *and* **cadō**), fall upon, happen.
dēsum, **-esse**, **-fuī**, (**dē** *and* **sum**), be away, fail.

praesum, -esse, -fuī, (**prae** *and* **sum**), be over, at the head of, command.

praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, (**prae** *and* **pōnō**), place over, place in command of.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, (**prō**(**d**) *and* **sum**), be profitable, help.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, (**super** *and* **sum**), be over, survive.

circiter, *adv.*, about.

270. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar hībernīs quae fēcerat lēgātum praeposuit. 2. Titus amīcīs in perīculīs nōn deerat. 3. Brūtus nāvibus longīs praefuerat. 4. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia centum et quadrāgintā superfuērunt. 5. Cōpia librōrum discipulīs nōn semper prōdest. 6. Pecūniā vōbīs adesse possumus. 7. Sociī reī pūblicae auxilium pollicēbantur. 8. Vēra amīcitia omnibus prōdest. 9. Nautae aliquī dē nāvibus in aquam cadēbant. 10. Sine auxiliō castrīs impedīmentīsque potīrī nōn poterimus. 11. Pēius mihi quam tibi accidit. 12. Domus mea ab urbe mīlia passuum decem abest. 13. Equitēs dēfessī explōrātōrum labōre fūnctī frūmentō vescēbantur.

II. 1. The best protection of the republic is the valor of its citizens. 2. The citizens were not able to use the help which had been sent to them. 3. The cavalry followed the enemy many miles. 4. He says that he is not afraid of dangers. 5. I am astonished at the skill of these young men. 6. You could have been present at the conference. 7. Do you think that Brutus will command the army? 8. We enjoy the books which we are reading. 9. The camp of Brutus was about five miles distant from the narrow pass. 10. How many of the allies survived (from) this battle? 11. My father commanded us always to speak the truth (true things).

271. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, Book I. 27–29.]

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mīsērunt, quī in itinere eum convēnērunt et pācem petīvērunt. Iūssit eōs in eō locō quō tum (*then*) essent (*were*, subjunctive of *sum*) suum adventum exspectāre. Quod iūsserat fēcērunt. Postquam (*after*) ad eum locum Caesar vēnerat circiter hominum mīlia sex nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum fūgērunt atque ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt (*hastened*). Hōs ab eīs quōrum per fīnēs iter fēcerant reductōs (*brought back*, perfect passive participle of *redūcō*) Caesar in hostium numerō habuit;[1] reliquōs in dēditiōnem recēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs unde (*whence*) vēnerant revertī (*to return*) iūssit. Hōc bellō Helvētiōrum et sociōrum circiter mīlia ducenta quīnquāgintā octō occīsī sunt.

CHAPTER XLIX.

Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

272. 1. **Dumnorīx Helvētiīs favet**, *Dumnorix favors the Helvetians.*

2. **Puer patrī pāret**, *the boy obeys his father.*

3. **Mīles gladiō sibi nocuit**, *the soldier hurt (injured) himself with his sword.*

Observe that these verbs govern the dative in Latin, though their English equivalents are transitive.

[1] **In hostium numerō habuit**, *held in the number of his enemies*, i.e. *put to death.*

273. RULE. — *Most verbs meaning to favor, please, trust, believe, help, and their opposites, also to command, obey, serve, resist, persuade, and the like, govern the dative.*

These verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally, *i.e.* corresponding to an English verb with the indefinite *it* as a subject; as, *nocētur*, it hurts (injures), *i.e.* harm (injury) is done; *patrī pārētur*, obedience is rendered to the father. Observe that with the impersonal passive of verbs governing the dative, the dative used with the active is retained unchanged.

Dēlectō, *iuvō*, and *iubeō*, (already familiar to the pupil) and a few other verbs of this class govern the accusative.

274. VOCABULARY.

equitātus, **-ūs**, *m.*, cavalry.
lēx, **lēgis**, *f.*, law.
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um**, (**alius**), belonging to another, unfavorable.
crēdō, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditum**, (*cf.* *Eng.* credit), trust.
faveō, **-ēre**, **fāvī**, **fautum**, favor.
noceō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **nocitum**, harm, injure.
parcō, **-ere**, **pepercī**, spare.
pāreō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, obey.
longē, *adv.*, far.

275. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Bonī cīvēs lēgibus cīvitātis pārent. 2. Eā ōrātiōne sibi āc reī pūblicae nocuit. 3. Scīmus mala omnibus accidere. 4. Ille puer vēra non semper dīcit neque eī crēdere possum. 5. Cicerō prōvinciam omnem Caesarī favēre reppererat. 6. Equitātus Helvētiōrum in aliēnō locō proelium committunt, et tertia eōrum pars occīsa est. 7. Iubet servum sōlis occāsū equum ad sē addūcere. 8. Equitātum sine māgnō perīculō sequī poterimus. 9. Labiēnus prōvinciae praepositus domō in Galliam properāvit. 10. Caesar mulieribus āc līberīs pepercit

sed virōs interfēcit. 11. Captīvīs nihil[1] nocēbitur. 12. Propter auxilī adventum equitātus nōs nōn longē secūtus est.

II. 1. I was not able to be present at the conference. 2. Brutus was distant from the city about twenty miles. 3. Large armies are not profitable to republics. 4. A few who had survived from the battle fell in the flight. 5. We were not far distant from the largest town of our allies. 6. Soldiers promise to obey their generals. 7. The ambassador did not trust the escort (*praesidium*) which had been sent. 8. The consul favors severe laws. 9. He will spare Dumnorix on account of the friendship of his brother. 10. He was able to assist his younger brothers. 11. Who is at the head of this army?

CHAPTER L.

Ferō and Compounds of Ferō.

276. Learn the indicative, infinitives, and participles of both voices of ferō (p. 226).

Observe that in the forms referred to, the irregularities are confined to the present tense.

What are the irregularities?

The changes which take place in the final consonant of the preposition in the compounds will be learned from the principal parts.

[1] Used adverbially, *in nothing*.

277. VOCABULARY.

cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, advice, counsel, plan.
lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.
mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month.
nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation.
eō, *adv.*, to that place, thither.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, carry, bring.
cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātum, (**con** *and* **ferō**), bring together, collect.
efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, (**ex** *and* **ferō**), bring or carry out, produce.
īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātum, (**in** *and* **ferō**), bear against; **bellum īnferre,** begin war.

278. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Fert, ferunt. 2. Fertur, feruntur. 3. Effers, effertis. 4. Tulimus, tulit. 5. Effert, īnfert. 6. Cōnferimus, efferunt. 7. Cōnferēbat, cōnferēbantur. 8. Lātus est, ēlātī sunt. 9. Collātī sunt, illātum erat. 10. Auxilium ferre potest. 11. Dīcit sē auxilium lātūrum esse.

II. 1. We shall carry, he was carried. 2. They collect, they were being collected. 3. You (sing.) carry, you (plur.) are carried. 4. It was carried out, they were carried in. 5. They had collected arms. 6. We said that he would begin war.

279. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cīvēs Rōmānī nōmen rēgis ferre nōn potuērunt. 2. Omnēs Galliae nātiōnēs linguā et lēgibus sunt dissimilēs. 3. Multī sunt in nostrā urbe quī in bellō arma tulērunt. 4. In silvās palūdēsque incolae fugiunt suaque omnia eō cōnferunt. 5. Frūmentum trium mēnsium domō quemque efferre iubet. 6. Bona cōnsilia senum iuvenibus saepe prōfuērunt et semper prōderunt. 7. Neque Aeduīs

neque sociīs eōrum bellum īnferam. 8. Mihi hīc vir nōn nocuit, sed eī crēdere nōn possum. 9. Circiter mīlle hominēs quī in locō aliēnō coāctī erant pūgnāre interfectī sunt. 10. Pater putat malum fīliō accidisse.

II. 1. They were daily carrying grain from the fields into the camp. 2. Brutus did not spare his own son. 3. My brother is away, but he will be here in a short time. 4. Only ten days of this month remain. 5. Who was in command of the Roman legions in Gaul? 6. Good cavalry was not lacking in our war. 7. It is not easy to obey all men. 8. My mother favors her youngest son. 9. True friends render assistance in danger and adversity. 10. You see by far the most beautiful part of Gaul. 11. Brutus will be appointed to the command of the cavalry.

280. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, Book I. 30–31]

Post (*after*) bellum Helvētiōrum tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum ad Caesarem convēnērunt. Petiērunt ut (*that*) sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere (*to appoint*) licēret (*it might be permitted*, with dative). Dīxērunt sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ab eō petere vellent (*wished*). Hōc Caesar permīsit (*permitted*). Prīncipēs diem conciliō cōnstituērunt. Post concilium prō hīs Divitiacus apud Caesarem dīxit: Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs (*parties*) esse duās; hārum alterius ducēs esse Aeduōs, alterius Sēquanōs. Hōs dē potestāte multōs iam annōs bellum gessisse. Ā Sēquanīs Germānōs in Galliam trādūctōs (*led across*) esse et Sēquanōrum hostēs multīs proeliīs superāvisse; Sēquanōs

ipsōs Germānīs pārēre coāctōs esse. Ducem Germānōrum, Ariovistum, barbarum atque crudēlem (*cruel*) esse. Caesarem exercitū suō eum prohibēre posse nē[1] māiōrem multitūdinem in Galliam dūcat, Galliamque omnem ab ēius iniūriā dēfendere posse.

CHAPTER LI.

Irregular Verbs Volō, Nōlō, and Mālō.

281. Learn the indicative, infinitive, and participles of **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō** (p. 224). (Observe that the irregularity of ending is confined to the present tense.)

282. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Lēgī pārēre vult. 2. Scrībere volumus. 3. Labōrāre nōn vult. 4. Legere māvult. 5. Scīre voluī. 6. Pūgnāre nōlunt. 7. Iubēre volēbat. 8. Fugere nōluit. 9. Dīxit sē nōlle dūcere. 10. Dīcunt sē mālle sequī.

II. 1. You (sing.) wish to move. 2. He is not willing to lead. 3. We prefer to remain. 4. He desired to be well. 5. They were not willing to follow. 6. He wishes to be present. 7. They will be unwilling to follow. 8. He says that he prefers to run. 9. What does he wish to say? 10. They wish to command.

---

[1] **nē . . . dūcat**, *from leading;* or, *that he should not lead.*

283. VOCABULARY.

profectiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, departure.
iūstus, **-a**, **-um**, just.
cōnor, **-ārī**, **-ātus**, try, endeavor.
incidō, **-ere**, **-cidī**, (**in** *and* **cadō**), fall into, fall in with.
volō, **velle**, **voluī**, be willing, wish.
nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, (**nē** *and* **volō**), be unwilling.
mālō, **mālle**, **māluī**, (**magis** *and* **volō**), wish more, prefer.
post, (*prep. with acc.*), after.

284. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mōns quem Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluit ab hostibus tenētur. 2. Per prōvinciam nostram sine iniūriā iter facere volunt. 3. Post profectiōnem equitātūs captīvī cūstōdibus nocēre conātī sunt. 4. Nōn vult aliī iniūriam īnferre. 5. Senex fīliō quī inciderat in rēs adversās auxilium tulit. 6. Mālumus aestāte lītus incolere quam in urbe manēre. 7. Virī multārum nātiōnum Rōmam sē suaque contulerant. 8. Puella ex urbe multa domum efferre vult. 9. Nātūrā cōgimur ad quiētem māgnā noctis parte ūtī. 10. Captīvī cūstōdibus nocēre cōnātī impedīmenta portāre coācti sunt.

II. 1. Some men are not willing to obey the laws of the state. 2. The young man prefers to use his own language (rather) than that of another. 3. The boy is not willing to take the advice of older men. 4. The just judge did not favor the citizens of his own city. 5. Our country produces food for other nations. 6. The general was not willing to encamp in an unfavorable place. 7. Other nations use much food which our country produces. 8. Cæsar spared his enemies, and they (*quī*) slew him. 9. We desire to trust those among whom we dwell. 10. The lieutenants will select a place for a camp and carry thither an abundance of everything.

OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER LII.

Irregular Verbs Eō and Fīō.

Two Datives.

285. Learn the indicative, the infinitives, and the participles of eō and fīō (p. 227).

Notice that *i*, the stem of eō is changed to *e* in the first person singular and the third person plural of the present indicative, and in the present participle except in the nominative singular.

Fīō is used as the passive of faciō.

286. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Ad colloquium it. 2. In urbem ībunt. 3. Initium fugae fit. 4. In vīcum iit. 5. Clārus fīēs. 6. Proelium factum erat. 7. Māgnus fierī voluit. 8. Nōluī īre. 9. Ierant, ierint in īnsulam. 10. Nōn fit poēta.

II. 1. We are going to the village. 2. We shall go, he has gone. 3. It happened to be summer. 4. He preferred to go. 5. He has become a man. 6. I desire to become a merchant. 7. They will go in the night. 8. He says that his father has gone. 9. He says that he is about to go. 10. He will become famous.

287. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Aeduī Caesarī auxiliō erant,** *the Aeduans were* (*for*) *a support to Cæsar.*
2. **Equitēs auxiliō Brūtō mīssī sunt,** *the cavalry were sent as a support to Brutus.*

Observe that in each sentence one of the datives may be translated by *for*, and the other by *to*. The one translated by *for* is called the dative of *purpose*. The dative of purpose is frequently better rendered as a predicate noun (sometimes with *as*) than by *for*.

288. RULE. — *Two datives, of the object to which and of the end for which, are used with* **sum** *and a few other verbs.*

289. VOCABULARY.

dolor, -ōris, *m.*, grief, pain.
parēns, -entis, *m.* and *f.*, parent.
trāns, (*prep. with acc.*), across.
dēbeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum, ought, owe.
eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, go.
exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, (**ex** *and* **eō**), go out *or* away.
redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, (**red** *and* **eō**), go back, return.
fīō, fierī, factus, (*pass. of* **faciō**), be made, become.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus, be born.
praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, (**prae** *and* **ferō**), carry before, prefer.

290. EXERCISES.

I 1. Alius agricola fierī vult, alius mercātor. 2. Omnēs hūmānitātem voluptātī praeferre dēbēmus. 3. Agricola auxiliō fīliīs domum hominem mīsit. 4. Cōnābimur ante profectiōnem tuam domum redīre. 5. Parentēs nostrī ex urbe exiērunt; multō diē redībunt. 6. Multī iuvenēs domō exīre quam cum parentibus manēre mālunt. 7. Omnia nostra cōnferēmus et in prōvinciam ībimus. 8. Senex nātiōnum multārum linguīs ūtitur. 9. Parentēs meī ex Graeciā multa efferēbant. 10. Nātus quadrāgintā annōs Caesar cōnsul factus est. 11. Ubi fuistī dē secundā vigiliā proximae noctis? 12. Cūr āfuistī domō? 13. Nātiōnēs quae trāns Rhēnum incolēbant Gallicā linguā nōn ūtēbantur.

II. 1. I shall try to find out his plan. 2. I have always wished to go to Rome. 3. The departure of our parents was (for) a great grief to us. 4. Every one[1] ought to prefer to become good (rather) than famous. 5. He was unwilling to wage war upon his fellow-citizens. 6. In the wars of Rome many citizens were slain. 7. The merchant desired to be away two months. 8. He is a just man and ought to be made a judge. 9. The cavalry of all Gaul came together in one place after Cæsar's departure. 10. We fell in with your parents in Rome twenty days ago.

291. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, I. 33–40.]

Caesar Gallōrum animōs cōnfīrmāvit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae (dat. of cūra, *care*) futūram esse; crēdere[2] sēsē auctōritāte suā adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum esse. Tum (*then*) concilium dīmīsit. Lēgātī ā Caesare missī ab Ariovistō pōstulāvērunt ut (*that*) in colloquium venīret (*would come*). Hīs Ariovistus respondit sē ventūrum nōn esse. Caesar iterum lēgātōs mīsit quī dīcēbant sē Aeduōs aliōsque populī Rōmānī amīcōs dēfēnsūrum esse. Eōdem tempore ad Caesarem lēgātī ab Aeduīs et Treverīs veniēbant quī dīcēbant multōs Germānōs in Galliam vēnisse et in fīnibus suīs cōnsēdisse. Hīs rēbus adductus Caesar bellum quam celerrimē cum Ariovistō gerere cōnstituit, et Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, īre

[1] The Romans often used **omnēs** where we say *every one*.

[2] Sometimes the indirect discourse depends upon a verb merely implying the idea of saying (here **pollicitus est**). In English, insert *saying* or *and said*.

properāvit. Mīlitēs, vōcibus territī Gallōrum āc mercātōrum quī ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne (*practice*) in armīs esse dīcēbant, longius (comparative of *longē*) īre nōlēbant. Eōrum animōs Caesar longā ōrātiōne cōnfīrmāvit.

CHAPTER LIII.

Derivation and Composition of Words.

292. Latin words, like English words, are sometimes simple, that is, made of one part; and sometimes compound, that is, made of two or more parts, each of which has a distinct meaning. Examples of compound words have already been given, some of which are repeated in the following lists for comparison and further study.

sum, *I am.*

ab-sum, *I am away (from), I am absent.*

ad-sum, *I am at* or *near* (the person or thing in question), *I am present.*

dē-sum, *I am away from, I am wanting* or *lacking, I fail.*

prae-sum, *I am before, am in front of, am present, am at the head of* (as a leader is in front of the army), *I command.*

prō-sum, *I am for* (a person or thing), *I help, am advantageous.*

super-sum, *I am over, I am left over, I survive.*

pos-sum, (from **pot** [**is**], *able*, and **sum**) *I am able, I can.*

ferō, *I bear, carry, bring.*

cōn-ferō, *I carry* or *bring together* (then, because when two or more things are brought together one cannot help seeing their points of resemblance or difference, *I compare*).

dif-ferō, *I bear* or *carry apart, I put off*, also *I differ.*
ef-ferō, (for **ec** [*i.e.* **ex**] **-ferō**), *I bear* or *carry out.*
īn-ferō, *I bear* or *bring in* or *against.*
prae-ferō, *I bear* or *carry* or *put before, I prefer.*
eō, *I go.*
ex-eō, *I go out.*
red-eō, *I go back, I return.*
capiō, *I take.*
re-cipiō, *I take back, recover.*
teneō, *I hold.*
con-teneō, *I hold together, contain, bound* (in geographical sense).
per-teneō, *I hold* or *stretch through, extend, pertain to.*
sus-teneō, (for **sub-teneō**), *I hold up from underneath, sustain.*
ob-teneō, *I hold* (*against opposition*), *I maintain.*

The prefixes in the compounds given above are of very great use in Latin word-making. Learn their meanings. Notice that when the stem of a verb compounded with one of these prefixes contains a short *a* or *e*, that vowel is changed to short *i* (*e.g.* **capiō**, **re-cipiō**, **teneō**, **con-teneō**). Notice also that the final consonant of the prefix is sometimes changed to suit the initial consonant of the word with which it is used (*e.g.* **ef-ferō** for **ec-ferō**, **dif-ferō** for **dis-ferō**, **sus-teneō** for **sub-teneō**).

NOTE. — There are other ways of making compounds, as **iūs-iūrandum**, *oath*, from **iūs**, *right, law*, and **iūrandum**, the gerundive of the verb **iūrō**, *to swear*. The composition of such words is explained, as they occur, in the special vocabularies from this point to the end of the book.

293. In the compound words given above, each part retains the meaning it has as a separate word. So, for instance, **eō** is a verb, *go*, and **ex-eō** is also a verb, *go out*. But words are made from other words by *derivation*, as well as by *composition*. Notice **amō**, *love*, **amīcus**, *friendly*

or *friend*, amīcitia, *friendship*. Here amō is a verb, amīcus an adjective (used also as a noun), and amīcitia a noun. Yet all evidently belong together in meaning, and all contain the root **am-**.

294. Examine the following: —

imperō (stem **imperā-**), *I command.*
vincō (stem **vic-**), *I conquer.*
imperātor (**-ōris**, *m.*), *commander, general.*
victor (**-ōris**, *m.*), *conqueror, victor.*

295. RULE. — *The ending* ***-tor*** *added to verb stems forms masculine nouns denoting the* ***agent*** *or* ***doer*** *of an action.*

NOTE. — The verb stem is most easily found by removing the ending of the supine. If the supine of the verb ends in *-sum*, the ending of the noun is *-sor* instead of *tor;* as, **dēfendō** (supine **dēfēnsum**), *defend*, **dēfēnsor**, *defender*.

296. Examine the following: —

dē-dō (supine **dēditum**), *I surrender.*
mūniō (supine **mūnītum**), *I fortify.*
ad-veniō (supine **adventum**), *I come to, arrive.*
dēdi-tiō (**-ōnis**, *f.*), *surrender.*
mūnī-tiō (**-ōnis**, *f.*), *fortification.*
adventus (**-ūs**, *m.*), *arrival.*

297. RULE. — *The endings* ***-tiō*** *and* ***-tus,*** *added to verb stems, form abstract nouns expressing action.*

NOTE. — The endings *-iō* (*-ōnis*, f.) and *-tūra* (*-ae*, f.) are used in the same way. If the supine of the verb ends in *-sum*, the endings are *-siō*, *-sus*, and *-sūra;* as, **ūtor** (deponent, p.p. **ūsus**), *I use*, **ūsus** (*-ūs*, m.), *use*.

298. Examine the following: —

mīles (stem **mīlit-**), *soldier.*	**mīlit-ia** (**-ae**, *f.*), *military service.*
amīcus (stem **amīco-**), *friend.*	**amīci-tia** (**-ae**, *f.*), *friendship.*
celer (stem **celeri-**), *quick.*	**celeri-tās** (**-tātis**, *f.*), *quickness.*
vir (stem **viro-**), *man.*	**vir-tūs** (**-tūtis**, *f.*), *manliness, virtue, courage.*
māgnus (stem **māgno-**), *great.*	**māgni-tūdō** (**-tūdinis**, *f.*), *greatness, size.*

299. Rule. — *The endings* ***-ia, -tia, -tās, -tūs, -tūdō****, added to adjective and noun stems, form feminine abstract nouns expressing quality.*

Note. — A final *o* of the stem is regularly changed to *i* before these endings (as **amīco-, amīcitia**). In **virtūs**, formed from the stem *viro-*, the *o* is dropped. Occasionally the stem is slightly changed in some other way, as in **facultās**, *ability*, from stem *facili-* of **facilis**, *easy.*

300. Adjectives are formed in Latin as in English from nouns (nominal adjectives) and from verbs (verbal adjectives). So few derived adjectives are used in this book that only a few endings can be given here.

The endings *-ānus, -ēnus, -īnus*, added to noun stems minus their final vowel, form adjectives with the sense of *belonging to;* as, **Rōma**, *Rome*, **Rōmānus**, *Roman;* **alius**, *another*, **aliēnus**, *belonging to another* or *to others, foreign.*

The endings *-ilis* and *-bilis* added to verb stems form adjectives denoting passive qualities; as, **faciō**, *do*, **facilis**, *doable, easy;* **crēdō**, *believe*, **crēd-i-bilis**, *to be believed, credible.*

301. Verbs are sometimes derived from noun or adjective stems; as, **līberō**, *set free*, from the stem of **līber**, *free;* — sometimes from verb stems. Most verbs

of the first conjugation are formed from noun or adjective stems in *a* or *o* (first or second declension), and many verbs of the fourth conjugation are formed from noun or adjective stems in *i* (third declension). Some verbs of the second and third conjugations, also, are formed from noun and adjective stems.

CHAPTER LIV.

Subjunctive Mood.

Sequence of Tenses; Indirect Question.

302. Learn the subjunctive mood of **sum** (p. 221).

What must be added to the present infinitive to form the imperfect subjunctive? How does the perfect subjunctive differ from the future perfect indicative? What must be added to the perfect infinitive to form the pluperfect subjunctive?

303. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Reperiō ubi sīs, ubi fueris,** *I am finding out where you are, where you have been* (or *were*).
2. **Reperiam ubi sīs, ubi fueris,** *I shall find out where you are, where you have been* (or *were*).
3. **Reppererō ubi sīs, ubi fueris,** *I shall have found out where you are, where you have been* (or *were*).
4. **Reperiēbam ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs,** *I was finding out where you were, where you had been.*

5. **Repperī ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs,** *I found out where you were, where you had been.*
6. **Reppereram ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs,** *I had found out where you were, where you had been.*

The tenses of the principal clauses of the first three examples — the present, the future, and the future perfect — are called *primary* or *principal* tenses. The tenses of the principal clauses of the last three examples — the imperfect, the perfect and the pluperfect — are called *secondary* or *historical* tenses.

In the subjunctive, the present and perfect are primary; the imperfect and pluperfect, secondary.

To which class of tenses, primary or secondary, do the verbs of the subordinate clauses of the first four examples belong?

To which class do the verbs of the subordinate clauses of the last three examples belong?

304. RULE. — *Primary tenses of the indicative are followed by primary tenses of the subjunctive, and secondary tenses by secondary tenses.*

305. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

DIRECT QUESTIONS.	INDIRECT QUESTIONS.
1. **Quis est tuus comes?** *Who is your companion?*	1. **Sciō quis sit tuus comes,** *I know who your companion is.*
2. **Ubi erās?** *Where were you?*	2. **Audīvī ubi essēs,** *I heard where you were.*
3. **Cūr āfuistī?** *Why were you absent?*	3. **Repperī cūr abessēs,** *I have found out why you were absent.*

Observe (1) that each dependent clause in the examples begins with an interrogative word; (2) that while it has not the form of a question, it gives the substance of the question

opposite; (3) that it depends upon a verb, either as subject or object. Such clauses are called *indirect questions.*

Notice the mood of indirect questions.

306. RULE. — *The subjunctive is used in indirect questions.*

307. VOCABULARY.

fīnitimus, -ī, *m.*, neighbor, (**fīni-**, *stem of* **fīnis**, *adj. ending* **-timus**).
Procillus, -ī, *m.*, Procillus.
terra, -ae, *f.*, earth.
ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, advantage, use.
hortor, -ārī, -ātus, urge, exhort.
intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, (**inter** *and* **legō**), understand.
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus, pursue.
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, ask, inquire about.

308. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ubi fueris proximā nocte intellegere nōn possum. 2. Cūr domī nōn essēs mīrābātur. 3. Māter intellegit quid līberīs ūsuī sit. 4. Iūlia patriam omnibus terrīs praefert. 5. Post bellum patria nostra secundīs rēbus ūsa est. 6. Magister ā mē quaesīvit cūr āfuissem. 7. Quae causa dolōris esset mīrātus est. 8. Procillus in ipsum Caesarem hostem equitatū persequentem incidit. 9. Nauta Iūliam sibi uxōrī dēlēgit. 10. Dumnorīx et domī et in fīnitimīs cīvitātibus multōs amīcōs habēbat. 11. Centuriō suōs hortātus exspectantibus[1] sīgnum dat. 12. Puerī quī trāns flūmen fūgērunt nōlunt dīcere ubi fuerint.

II. 1. He asks me why I was absent so long. 2. Cicero was made consul by the Romans when forty-two years old. 3. I will endeavor to be just to every one.[2] 4. You ought to go home early every day. 5. Your parents

[1] See **50**, note.

[2] With **iūstus** use **in** with acc., not dative.

know where you are. 6. Your parents knew where you were. 7. After the departure of my friends I returned home. 8. Everybody prefers to go from the city in summer. 9. My father understands what books are agreeable to me. 10. They threw their arms to the ground and fled. 11. We wish to be useful to our neighbors.

CHAPTER LV.

First Conjugation: Subjunctive Active.

Clauses of Purpose (Final Clauses).

309. Learn the subjunctive active of amō.

Inflect the subjunctive of nārrō, vāstō, occupō, cēlō.

310. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Lēgātum mittit ut agrōs vāstet,** *he sends a lieutenant that he may lay waste, in order to lay waste, to lay waste, the fields.*
2. **Lēgātum mittit quī (ut is) agrōs vāstet,** *he sends a lieutenant who is to lay waste, in order to lay waste, to lay waste, the fields.*
3. **Ex duce petunt nē agrōs vāstet,** *they ask the commander that he may not lay waste, not to lay waste, the fields.*

Notice the various English equivalents of the subordinate clauses beginning with *ut*, *nē*, and *quī*, and also the mood of the verbs which follow these particles.

What is the difference in meaning between *ut* and *nē*?

Ut . . . vāstet, *quī . . . vāstet*, and *nē . . . vāstet* express the purpose of the action of the principal verb. Such clauses are called *clauses of purpose* (*final clauses*).

311. RULE. — *The subjunctive with* **ut, nē,** *or a relative is used to express purpose* (*final clauses*).

CAUTION. — The rule for sequence of tenses given in the last chapter must be observed in clauses of purpose (final clauses).

312. VOCABULARY.

mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
tūtus, -a, -um, safe.
cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, (**con** *and* **gnōscō**), find out.
moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitum, advise, warn.
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, leave.
remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, *no supine; fut. part.*, **remānsūrus,** (**re** *and* **maneō**), remain.
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid.
ut, *conj.*, that, in order that.
nē, *conj.*, that not, in order that not.

313. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Eum mittit ut vāstet, occupet, iuvet. 2. Eōs mittit ut vāstent, occupent, iuvent. 3. Eum mīsit ut vāstāret, occupāret, iuvāret. 4. Eōs mittet ut vāstent, occupent, iuvent. 5. Eōs monet nē cēlent, properent, vītent, līberent. 6. Eum monēbat nē cēlāret, properāret, vītāret, līberāret.

II. 1. He advises them to carry, hasten, adorn, set free. 2. He was advising them not to carry, hasten, adorn, set free. 3. He sent cavalry to assist, to attack, to set free. 4. He will send cavalry to assist, to attack, to set free.

314. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Labiēnus trāns flūmen māgnās cōpiās mīsit quae mūnītum locum occupārent. 2. Caesar quaesīvit quot Germānī in Galliā essent. 3. Quaerit quā dē causā sē

vītāverim. 4. Mors clārī poētae dolōrī cīvibus erat. 5. Cūstōdēs captīvōs ad montem fugientēs persequēbantur. 6. Iūssit mulierēs et līberōs ex oppidō exīre ut iniūriam vītārent. 7. Perīculī temporibus sociīs auxilium ferre dēbēmus. 8. Trēs legiōnēs relīquit ut oppidum ab impetū hostium tūtum esset. 9. Imperātor mē monet ut domī hiemem. 10. Cōgnōscēmus ubi arma tua cēlāveris. 11. Māior nātū fīlius domō discēdere, minor remanēre māvult.

II. 1. He did not know why I was avoiding him. 2. I will see who is in the garden. 3. He advised his son to remain in the city. 4. He sent his servant to carry grain to his horse. 5. We shall return home at[1] the beginning of summer to assist our parents. 6. The old man urged his son to return home with the utmost speed. 7. He told me why he was hurrying. 8. We shall warn the Helvetians not to attack the towns of our neighbors. 9. I prefer the city where I was born to this (city). 10. We were unable to find the cause (what was the cause) of the boy's death. 11. My mother thinks that I am safer on land.

315. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, I. 41–47.]

Septimō diē postquam (*after*) Vesontiōne castra mōta erant ab explōrātōribus nūntiātum est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlibus passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse. Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit quī eum in colloquium vocārent. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Ad colloquium Caesar decimae legiōnis mīlitēs, quōs sibi

[1] Prīmā aestāte.

fīdissimōs habēbat, in equōs positōs sēcum dūxit. Per eōs Caesar Ariovistum prohibēre voluit nē sē interficere cōnārētur (imperf. subj. of *cōnor*). In colloquiō Ariovistus summā arrogantiā (*the greatest arrogance*) ūsus est equitēsque quī cum eō vēnerant in Rōmānōs lapidēs tēlaque iēcērunt. Caesar cum mīlitibus suīs in castra sē recēpit, neque iterum (*again*) vocātus in colloquium īre volēbat, quod sine perīculō sē facere posse nōn putābat, sed Gāium Valerium Procillum et Mārcum Metium mīsit. Hīs mandāvit (*commissioned*) ut quae dīceret (*said*, imperf. subj. of *dīcō*) Ariovistus sibi nūntiārent. Hōs Ariovistus dīcere cōnantēs prohibuit et in catēnās (*fetters, chains*) coniēcit (*threw*).

CHAPTER LVI.

First Conjugation: Subjunctive Passive.

Clauses of Result (*Consecutive Clauses*).

316. Learn the subjunctive passive of **amō**.

317. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puer tam dēfessus fuit ut eum iuvārem,** *the boy was so tired that I helped him.*
2. **Puer ita fēcit ut nōn amārētur,** *the boy acted so that he was not loved.*
3. **Germānī tam fortēs erant ut tōtus exercitus perturbārētur,** *the Germans were so brave that all the army was disturbed.*

4. **Nēmō tam bonus est quī ab omnibus amētur**, *no one is so good that he is loved by all.*

The clauses beginning with *ut* and *quī* in these sentences denote result (consecutive clauses). Observe that they are the same in form as purpose clauses, except that *ut nōn* is used instead of *nē* in negative sentences.

318. RULE. — *The subjunctive with* ***ut, ut nōn,*** *or a relative, is used to express result.*

319. VOCABULARY.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, change.
inimīcus, -ī, *m.*, (in *and* amīcus), a person unfriendly, an enemy.
mēns, mentis, *f.*, mind.
pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge.
sūspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion.
timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear.
tantus, -a, -um, so great.
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, doubt.

320. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Eāsdem cōpiās quae ad portum cōnsēderant praesidiō nāvibus relīquit. 2. Iter tam difficile erat ut eōdem diē redīre nōn cōnārēmur. 3. Eā pecuniā ita ūtēminī ut[1] aliīs prōsītis. 4. Tantus timor tōtum exercitum occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animīque perturbārentur. 5. Caesar ducēs mīlitum convōcāvit ut dēlīberārent quid optimum esset. 6. Adventū auxiliōrum tanta commūtātiō facta est ut nēmō in hostēs impetum facere dubitāret. 7. Omnēs fīnitimōs cōgnōscere volumus. 8. Caesar terrā marīque[2] inimīcōs bellum sibi īnferentēs persequēbātur. 9. Pōns in Rhodanō plūribus ante annīs factus erat. 10. Ex captīvīs cōgnōvit quī cum Cicerōne

[1] **Ita ut prōsītis**, *so that you may* (or *will*) *benefit, so as to benefit.*
[2] In this phrase **in** is regularly omitted.

dēlīberāvissent. 11. Dux mīlitēs hortātus est ut timōris sūspīciōnem vītārent.

II. 1. He fortifies the camp that it may be safe from the attack of the enemy. 2. The town was so fortified that it was not taken by the enemy. 3. The judge was so just that he was praised by all his fellow-citizens. 4. Cicero did not think that death was the end of the soul. 5. He exhorted his sons to avoid bad company. 6. My friend warned me not to spend the winter in Britain. 7. The general understood why I hesitated to remain in camp. 8. The seashore was so pleasant that the boys were delighted. 9. The recruit is made brave by daily experience in (of the) camp. 10. The consul was disturbed in mind and spirit by the suspicion of his enemies.

CHAPTER LVII.

Second Conjugation: Subjunctive Mood.

Purpose and Result Clauses. — Continued.

321. Learn the subjunctive active and passive of **habeō**.

322. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Clauses after Verbs of Fearing.

1. **Verētur ut locum occupet,** *he fears that he will not get possession of the place.*
2. **Verētur nē hostēs locum occupent,** *he fears that the enemy will get possession of the place.*

3. **Timēbātur nē amīcum vulnerāret,** *he was afraid he might wound his friend.*
4. **Timēmus ut in urbem vēnerit,** *we fear he has not come to the city.*

Observe that in these sentences *ut* is translated with *not* and *nē* without it.

323. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Clauses after Quīn.

1. **Nōn dubitō quīn amētur,** *I do not doubt that he is loved.*
2. **Nōn abest sūspīciō quīn vērum cēlat,** *the suspicion is not wanting that he is concealing the truth.*
3. **Nōn dubitāvērunt quīn vērum esset,** *they did not doubt that it was true.*
4. **Nōn dubium erat quīn hostēs vēnissent,** *there was no doubt that the enemy had come.*

324. VOCABULARY.

mīlitia, -ae, *f.*, military service.
voluntās, -ātis, *f.*, will, good will.
dīgnus, -a, -um, worthy.
dubius, -a, -um, doubtful, (cf. Eng. dubious).
cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, arrange, decide.
proficīscor, -ī, profectus, set out.
contrā (*prep. with acc.*), against.
quīn, *conj.*, that, but that.

325. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nēmō dubitāre dēbet quīn nostrī cīvēs prō patriā fortiter pūgnent. 2. Pater timet ut fīlius valeat. 3. Timēbat ut comes fidē dīgnus esset. 4. Nōn est dubium quīn iuvenis fidē dīgnus sit. 5. Num potest quisquam dubitāre quīn Ītalia poētārum et ōrātōrum sit patria? 6. Sūspīciō nōn abest quīn in Ītaliā remaneat ut mīlitiam

vītet. 7. Quaeris ā nōbīs cūr ita hōc homine dēlectēmur. 8. Cōnstituit post mortem patris domum relinquere et in urbem īre. 9. Contrā voluntātem meam accidit ut in prōvinciam proficīscar. 10. Pater fīlium domum relinquentem monuit ut malōs comitēs vītāret.

II. 1. We feared that Ariovistus intended[1] to remain. 2. It happened that we knew your plan. 3. So great was the fear of our soldiers that they did not sustain the attack of the enemies' cavalry. 4. We will find out how many bridges over the Rhone remain. 5. He did not doubt that his neighbors were safe. 6. So great a change in affairs was made in a few months that his enemies were greatly frightened. 7. The lieutenant wished to lead his infantry across the bridge and encamp upon the hill. 8. He feared that his soldiers would not obey. 9. There is no doubt that the orator will be present. 10. The general fears that the minds and feelings of the recruits (new soldiers) will be disturbed by the approach of the enemy.

326. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, I. 48.]

Eōdem diē Ariovistus castra prōmōvit (*moved forward, prō* and *mōvit*) et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub (*under, at the foot of*) monte cōnsēdit. Posterō diē praeter (*past*) Caesaris castra suās cōpiās dūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ūltrā (*beyond*) eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō ut frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs portārētur, Caesarem interclūderet (*shut off*). Ex eō diē diēs continuōs (*successive*) quīnque Caesar

[1] **Esset in animō. Cf. Orgetorīgī in animō erat, 171.**

prō castrīs suās cōpiās ēdūxit ut Ariovistō potestātem pūgnandī (*of fighting*, gerund of *pūgnō*) daret. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equitātū cottīdiē proelium commīsit. Gēnus hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Germānī exercuerant (*had trained*). Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem (*just so many*) numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī āc fortissimī. Cum hīs in proelia equitēs ībant. Ad eōs sē recipiēbant. Hī in perīculīs equitēs iuvābant, et tanta erat eōrum celeritās ut nōn minus vēlōciter quam equī currerent.

CHAPTER LVIII.

Imperative Constructions.

Wishes.

327. Learn the present imperative of **amō, moneō, dūcō, audiō, volō, nōlō.**

328. Imperative constructions include all kinds of commands, requests, and permissions. The following are the most common: —

	POSITIVE.	NEGATIVE.
1.	**properem**, *let me hurry.*	**nē properem**, *let me not hurry.*
2.	**properā**, *hurry*, or **properēs**, *you* (one) *must hurry.*	**nōlī properāre**, or **nē properāveris**, } *do not hurry.*

	POSITIVE.		NEGATIVE.	
3.	**properet,** or **properāverit,**	*let him hurry,* or *he shall hurry.*	**nē properet,** or **nē properāverit,**	*let him not hurry,* or *he shall not hurry.*

329. Commands, requests, and permissions are expressed by the subjunctive, except in the second person, and in the second person they may be expressed by the subjunctive.

1. The second person of the subjunctive in positive commands is rarely used except when the subject is *you* in the sense of *one* or *people.*

2. Negative commands of the second person are expressed by **nōlī** (**nōlīte**) with the present infinitive, or by the present or perfect subjunctive with **nē.**

3. Notice that in imperative sentences there is no difference in the translation between the present and the perfect subjunctive.

4. Notice that **nē** is the negative in imperative sentences.

330. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

(Utinam) bonus sīs, *may you be good.*
Utinam bonus essēs, *would you were good.*
Utinam bonus fuissēs, *would you had been good.*
(Utinam) nē malus sīs, *may you not be bad.*
(Utinam) nē malus essēs, *would you were not bad.*
(Utinam) nē malus fuissēs, *would you had not been bad.*

Notice that *utinam* is sometimes translated, and sometimes merely shows that the sentence in which it occurs is a wish. Notice, also, that *utinam* may usually be omitted in Latin. Notice that when the wish refers to the future the present

subjunctive, when it refers to the present the imperfect, and when it refers to the past the pluperfect, is used. When the wish refers to the present or past, it is unfulfilled. Compare the subjunctive in conditions, **337–340**. Observe that the negative is *nē*.

331. RULE. — *Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive, often introduced by* **utinam**. *The negative is* **nē**. *Wishes referring to the future take the present tense, unfulfilled wishes referring to the present take the imperfect, and referring to the past the pluperfect.*

332. VOCABULARY.

pecus, -oris, *n.*, flock.
antīquus, -a, -um, ancient.
nūllus, -a, -um, no, no one.
audeō, -ēre, ausus, (*dep. in perf., plup., and fut. perf.*), dare.
cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think.
cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take care, cause.
soleō, -ēre, solitus, (semi-dep.) be accustomed.
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, (**trāns** *and* **eō**), go across, cross.
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, live.
utinam, O that, would that.

333. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Properā, mī fīlī, domum redīre. 2. Librōs, dīscipulī, domum hodiē nē portāveritis. 3. Nē quisquam hunc hostem timuerit. 4. Nōlī putāre mē ad quemquam longās epistulās scrībere. 5. Cūrā ut vir dīgnus patre sīs et cōgitā quō in locō stēs. 6. Semper audēte vēra dīcere. 7. Nē solitī sītis hunc agrum trānsīre. 8. Nūllī erat dubium quīn arma contrā Caesarem parārentur. 9. Antīquī Germānī nōn multum frūmentō sed māgnā ex parte[1] pecore vīvēbant. 10. Nōn tam ācer cīvis sum ut putem mīlitiam esse semper grātam. 11. Dēbēmus ita

[1] *In great part, largely.*

vīvere ut aliīs prōsīmus. 12. Nē mīlitēs dē mortis perīculō cōgitāverint. 14. Utinam māter adesset. 15. Utinam domī āfuissem.

II. 1. The minds of the soldiers were seized with so great fear that they were thrown into disorder. 2. The orator feared that his speech might seem too long. 3. He decided to go (set out) to Britain to avoid wrong from (of) his enemies. 4. I do not doubt that the bridge is safe. 5. Send the boy home. 6. Do not send the boy home. 7. Let the soldiers avoid the suspicion of fear. 8. Let us not fear the enemy. 9. These boys so act that they are loved by everybody. 10. Cæsar had perceived the good will of Divitiacus towards himself. 11. He wished to drive his flock to a safe place. 12. No one[1] doubts that the ancient Germans were brave. 13. May they not dare to cross.

CHAPTER LIX.

Third Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive; Conditional Sentences.

334. Learn the subjunctive active and passive of dūcō.

335. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Sī adest, laetī sumus, *if he is present, we are glad.*
Sī aderat, laetī erāmus, *if he was present, we were glad.*

[1] See I. 8.

Sī aderit, laetī erimus, *if he is* (*shall be*) *present, we shall be glad.*

Sī adfuit, laetī fuimus, *if he was* (*has been*) *present, we were* (*have been*) *glad.*

Notice that each sentence consists of two clauses, — a condition introduced by *sī* (if), and a conclusion. The truth of the conclusion depends upon the truth of the condition. Such sentences are called *conditional sentences.*

Notice that in the sentences given above nothing is implied as to the truth of the assertions. It is simply stated that *if* the condition is (was, shall be) true, the conclusion is (was, shall be) true. Such conditions are called *simple conditions.* Notice the mood of the verbs.

Notice that in simple future conditions the future tense is used when in English we use the present.

NOTE. — Conditions referring to action completed in past time are in the pluperfect; as, **sī adfuerat,** *if he had* (*at some previous time*) *been present.* But these do not often occur.

Sometimes a future conclusion depends upon a condition which will already belong to past time when the conclusion shall or may become true; as, *If I come, I shall go back.* I evidently cannot go back until after I have come; the condition therefore refers to the past; but the whole sentence refers to the future, therefore the condition must refer to the past and the future at once, *i.e.* must be in the future perfect tense, **sī vēnerō, redībō.**

336. RULE. — *In simple conditional sentences the indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.*

337. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Sī aderit, laetī erimus, *if he is* (*shall be*) *present, we shall be glad.*

Sī adsit laetī sīmus, *if he should be present, we should be glad.*

Notice that these sentences refer to the future. The second differs from the first only in being *less vivid,* implying that the

speaker is in doubt, or is unwilling to make a plain, simple statement. Notice the moods and tenses. Compare **330**, **331**.

338. RULE. — *Less vivid future conditions take the present subjunctive in both clauses.*

NOTE. — The form of the less vivid condition corresponding to the future perfect indicative of the simple (more vivid) condition (see **335**, note) is the perfect subjunctive, **sī vēnerim, redeam,** *if I should come (have come), I should go back.*

339. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Sī adesset, laetī essēmus, *if he were present, we should be glad.*

Sī adfuisset, laetī fuissēmus, *if he had been present, we should have been glad.*

Notice that in these sentences the condition is supposed to be untrue. Such conditions are called *conditions contrary to fact.* Notice the mood and the tenses of the verbs. Compare **330**, **331**.

340. RULE. — *In conditions contrary to fact the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time.*

341. VOCABULARY.

opus, operis, *n.*, work.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, report, [*pref.* **re-** + **nūntiō**].

resistō, -ere, restitī (no supine), resist, [*pref.* **re-** + **sistō** (*reduplicated form from* **stō**, stand)].

revertor, revertī, reversus sum, revertō, -ere, -revertī, reversum, return, go back. [**re-** again, + **vertor**, turn]. *The deponent forms are used chiefly in the present, imperf. and fut., the active forms in the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf.*

quis, quae (qua), quid, *indef. pron.*, any, any one, one.
quī, qua (quae), quod, *indef. pron.*, any (see **226**).
sī, *conj.*, if.
nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless, [**ni** (*for* **nē**) + **sī** (*with shortened vowel*)].

342. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sī māgnum pecoris numerum in castrīs habent, inopiā superārī nōn possunt. 2. Sī revertētur ut nōbīs resistat, tertiō diē pūgnābimus. 3. Sī vēra captīvus respondit, mīlitēs fortiter opus dēfendērunt. 4. Sī tanta erat operis altitūdō, hostibus facile resistere poterant. 5. Lēgātus nisi interfectus erit, in Ītaliam revertētur ut cōnsulī haec renūntiet. 6. Sī quis barbarīs restitit, nōn dubium est quīn interfectus sit. 7. Mīlitēs nisi castra dēfendere poterunt, nōn dubium est quīn omnēs fugiant. 8. Sī flūmen trānsiit ut in oppidum fugeret, nōn dubitō quīn vīvat; sī domī remānsit, interfectus est. 9. Sī vērum est quod explōrātōrēs renūntiāvērunt, hostēs ad castra venīre nōn ausī sunt. 10. Sī equitēs Rhēnum trānsiērunt ut locī nātūram cōgnōscerent, peditēs apud flūmen remānsērunt quī pontem dēfenderent.

II. 1. If one dares to resist, there is no danger. 2. No pain is so great that it cannot be borne if one wishes to bear it. 3. I do not doubt that the soldiers have returned to the work. 4. If you have determined to go against the enemy, you ought to think of the safety of the flocks. 5. If any dare not remain, let them return[1] home. 6. If the soldiers have not fled, the enemy have not taken the camp. 7. If you wish (use *volō*), you may return on the

[1] In Latin, as in English, the conclusion of a conditional sentence sometimes takes the form of a command, which must be expressed by the proper part of the verb. See Chapter LVIII.

fifth day. 8. The ancient Romans were accustomed to bear the toil of military service with the greatest good-will in order that they might deserve (be worthy) to be praised. 9. May you take care to answer truly (true things). 10. If you do not dare to resist the enemy, I fear you are not worthy to return to military service. 11. If any are accustomed to think of their own safety, they are not worthy to be called soldiers.

III. 1. Nisi māgnum pecoris numerum in castrīs habuissent, inopiā victī essent. 2. Sī quis nōbīs resistere audēbit, interficiētur. 3. Imperātor sī in castra revertātur, summā mīlitum voluntāte contrā hostēs proficīscātur. 4. Caesar sī adfuisset, pūgnāvisset; sī pūgnāvisset, hostēs superāvisset; sī hostēs superāvisset, Galliam occupāvisset. 5. Sī dīgnus essēs quī Rōmānus appellārēris, hostibus resisterēs. 6. Nisi quis dē hostium adventū nūntiāvisset, castra nostra capta essent. 7. Captīvus nisi vēra respondisset, statim ā mīlitibus interfectus esset. 8. Nisi Labiēnus ante sōlis occāsum revertātur, mīlitēs longō labōre dēfessī dē dēditiōne cōgitent. 9. Mīlitēs sī statim ē castrīs ēdūcantur, hostibus fortiter resistant. 10. Sī ante nōnam hōram in urbem cōnsul vēnerit, prīmā noctis vigiliā contrā hostēs īre contendēmus. 11. Utinam nē cum Germānīs proelium commīsisset.

IV. 1. If we do not take possession of the bridge, we shall not be able to cross the river. 2. If the soldiers who were in the town had not been frightened, they would not have fled. 3. If you should try to avoid death, you would not deserve (be worthy) to be called brave. 4. The forces of the enemy are so great that they would take the town if our men were not resisting

bravely. 5. If the place had not been surrounded by a wall, we should not have dared to remain. 6. If the Romans had not been tired by (their) work, they would have remained at the bridge to resist the Germans. 7. We shall not be able to return to camp unless some one comes to aid us (to us as an aid) before sunset. 8. If the foot-soldiers should run quickly to the river, they would seize the bridge. 9. If the general had not led out the soldiers from the camp into line of battle, the enemy would have set out for home on that day. 10. If the Gauls should make an attack upon our men, they would betake themselves to the camp.

343. READING LESSON.

[Cæsar, *Gallic War*, I. 49.]

Ubi (*when*) Ariovistum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius (compar. of *diū*) commeātū prohibērētur, ūltrā (*beyond*) eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant circiter passūs sēscentōs ab eīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī (*triple*) īnstrūctā (perf. pass. part. of *īnstruō*) [1] ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iūssit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sēscentōs, utī (*as*) dictum est, aberat. Eō (*thither*) circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedīta (*unencumbered, in fighting trim*) cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnītiōne (*from fortification*)

[1] **Aciē triplicī īnstrūctā**, *a triple line being drawn up*, i.e. *having formed a triple line.* So below, **mūnītīs castrīs**, *the camp having been fortified*, i.e. *when the camp was fortified.* See Chapter LXII., Ablative Absolute.

prohibērent. Caesar, ut (*as*) ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre (*drive off*), tertiam castra mūnīre iūssit. Castrīs mūnītīs[1] duās ibi (*there*) legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit (*led back*).

CHAPTER LX.

Fourth Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive.

Clauses with Cum.

344. Learn the subjunctive active and passive of audiō.

345. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

cum cīvitās bellum īnfert, ducēs dēliguntur, *when the state begins a war, leaders are chosen.*

cum haec legēs, aderō, *when you read* (i.e. *shall read*) *this, I shall be present.*

oppidum Britannī vocant, cum silvās mūniērunt, *the Britons call it a town, when they have fortified the woods.*

cum vēneris, cōgnōscēs, *when you come* (i.e. *shall have come*), *you will find out.*

Observe the mood and tenses.

346. RULE. — ***Cum*** *meaning* when (***cum*** *temporal*) *takes the indicative to define a time.*

---

[1] See p. 171, note.

347. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

cum esset Caesar in Galliā, lēgātī vēnērunt, *when Cæsar was in Gaul, envoys came.*

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, ab urbe profectus est, *when that was* (i.e. *had been*) *announced to Cæsar, he set out from the city.*

348. RULE. — *In narrative,* ***cum*** *meaning* when *or* as (***cum*** *historical*) *takes the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to describe a time.*

NOTE. — The indicative is used with **cum** when a *date* is given, the subjunctive when a *situation* or *circumstance* is given involving the idea of time. Generally dates are given in primary tenses, and therefore **cum** with the imperfect and pluperfect indicative is rare. When a time is *described*, the tenses used are naturally secondary, hence the use of the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive with **cum** in narrative.

349. VOCABULARY.

Britannus, -ī, *m.*, a Briton, inhabitant of Britain.

magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistrate, magistracy [*stem of* **magister** (master) + **a** (*as if from a verb of first conj.*) + **tus**].

mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification [**mūnī** (*of* **mūniō**) + **tiō**].

cum, *conj.*, when, as, since, although.

tamen, *conj.*, nevertheless, still, however.

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, contend, struggle, hasten [*pref.* **con** + **tendō**, stretch].

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come through, arrive [**per** + **veniō**].

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer.

350. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ad amīcōs, cum ūsus est, Gallī sē recipiunt. 2. Caesar cum Helvētiōs vīcisset, multōs annōs cum aliīs bellum gerēbat. 3. Helvētiī cum omnia cōnstituissent, Orgetorīgem ducem dēlēgērunt. 4. Ille cum dux

dēlēctus esset, Dumnorīgem addūxit ut rēgnum occupāre cōnārētur. 5. Cum magistrātūs multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs cōgerent, Orgetorīgis mors eīs nūntiātā est. 6. Barbarī cum oppidum cēpērunt, incolās interficiunt. 7. Dux cum hostēs vīcerit exercitum dīmittet nisi eī ā senātū imperātum erit ut cum Germānīs bellum gerat. 8. Sī vīs domum revertī, cūrā ut respondeās. 9. Ea rēs cum imperātōrī renūntiāta esset, in castrīs mīlitēs dēfessōs continuisset nisi veritus esset nē Germānī ad Rhēnum pervenīrent. 10. Britannī antīquī pecoribus et frūmentō vīvere solēbant. 11. Sī hostēs dē perīculō cōgitant, nūllī flūmen trānsīre audēbunt.

II. 1. When the soldiers heard the shout, they hastened into the city. 2. When the enemy had fortified the camp, they led out their forces into line of battle. 3. If the work of the fortification is done, cross the river and resist the enemy. 4. When the general himself heard the enemy coming, he gave the signal to the soldiers. 5. When an army arrives at a suitable place for a camp, they surround themselves with a fortification that they may be safe from the attack of the enemy. 6. When the shout of (those) fighting was heard in the camp, the soldiers hastened to the river. 7. When the camp had been fortified, the magistrates of the Gauls returned to Labienus to ask for (seek) peace. 8. Do not resist the enemy, lest they hasten to cross the Rhine and return home. 9. When the cavalry return, they will quickly make an end of the battle. 10. When the Helvetians had already made their way through the territory of the Sequanians, they arrived in the territory of our allies.

351. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

cum haec vēra sint, bene est, *since these things are true, it is well.*

cum dēfessus essem, domī manēbam, *since I was tired, I staid at home.*

cum adessem, mē nōn vīdistī, *although I was present, you did not see me.*

hōc cum audierim, nōn crēdō, *although I have heard this, I do not believe it.*

352. RULE. — ***Cum*** *causal and concessive* (*meaning* since *and* although) *takes the subjunctive in all tenses.*

353. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mīlitēs cum proeliō superātī essent, tamen nōn fūgērunt. 2. Hostēs cum dux interfectus esset in castra sē recēpērunt. 3. Cum māgna pars aestātis reliqua sit, in Britanniam profectus est. 4. Cum vīvāmus, laetī sīmus. 5. Cum vēnerit nūntius novās rēs cōgnōscēmus. 6. Explōrātor cum multās rēs repperisset tamen nihil renūntiāre ausus est. 7. Haec cum bene fēcisset, laudātus est. 8. Dux cum multa bene fēcisset, tamen ab inimīcīs accūsātus est. 9. Cum timōris sūspīciōnem vītāveris fortem esse tē dīcimus. 10. Mīlitēs, cum nēmō sine vulnere esset, tamen ad noctem resistēbant.

II. 1. Although he was of small stature (body), he was a brave general. 2. Since he had arrived at the city, he determined to remain. 3. Since the magistrates have come, let us hasten to go to the council. 4. Although the Britons have been conquered, I shall not return to Gaul. 5. Since the fortifications are high, we can easily resist the enemy. 6. Since you have come to

me, I will lead you to a safe place. 7. Although the soldiers are fighting sharply, they cannot overcome the enemy. 8. Since a great change of circumstances (things) has been brought about (made), let us seek safety in flight. 9. Although Cæsar had led out his legions into line of battle, the enemy remained in their camp. 10. Since the Gauls did not come against us, we returned into the fortifications.

CHAPTER LXI.

Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs.

Indirect Discourse.

354. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of **possum**, **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō**, **eō**, **fīō**, and **ferō**.

Review the rules for simple indirect discourse (p. 119).

355. VOCABULARY.

imperium, **-ī**, *n.*, command, rule, power, sway, [**imper** (*of* **imperō**, command) + abstract ending **-ium**].

porta, **-ae**, *f.*, gate.

pūgna, **-ae**, *f.*, fight, battle.

turris, **-is** (*acc.* **-im**), *f.*, tower.

etiam, *conj.*, even, also, [**et** + **iam**].

cōnficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, finish, wear out (*esp. in perf. pass. partic.*) [**con** + **faciō**].

exīstimō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, think, consider, [**ēx** + **aestimō**, compute (**ae** *weakened to* **ī**)].

356. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nūntius respondit turrim iam cōnfectam esse. 2. Sī scrībere potuisset, Britannōs ad urbis portam ventūrōs esse scrīpsisset. 3. Etiam cum ē mūnītiōne exīrēmus, hostēs pūgnātūrōs esse nōn exīstimābāmus. 4. Caesarī renūntiābātur mīlitēs vulneribus iam cōnfectōs esse. 5. Caesar cum cōgnōvisset Britannōs iam victōs esse, ad castra mūnītiōnēsque pervēnīre contendit. 6. Gallī etiam sī Caesaris imperium ferre nōluissent, tamen resistere nōn potuissent. 7. Sī celeriter castra fīant hostibus resistere possīmus. 8. Nisi ad opus revertī quam in pūgnā manēre māluissētis facile hostēs vīcissētis. 9. Lēgātus dīcēbat sē tertiō diē ad suōs ventūrum esse. 10. Sī quis dīcet sē pūgnam vīdisse, respondē pūgnam neque fuisse neque futūram esse.

II. 1. I saw that the Gauls were resisting; had resisted; would resist. 2. If you did not bear the toils of war, I should not say that you were brave. 3. If he had not been willing to go, he would not have gone. 4. Even if they thought that their allies were brave, they would wish to defend themselves with a fortification. 5. When he had seen that the magistrates were present, he said that he would reply immediately. 6. The messenger replied that the enemy had run to the gates and (*atque*) had seized even the tower. 7. They say that they cannot endure the rule of the Romans. 8. They announced that the foot-soldiers would seize the gates. 9. When they saw that the hill had been seized by the enemy, they understood that they were conquered. 10. If you think that the place is suitable for a camp, let us go thither.

357. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. DIRECT. **Sī quid vīs, cūr nōn venīs ad mē?** *If you want anything, why do you not come to me?*

   INDIRECT (primary tense). **Amīcus tuus respondet, sī quid velīs, cūr nōn veniās ad sē,** *your friend replies, if you want anything, why don't you come to him.*

   (secondary tense). **Caesar respondit, sī quid Ariovistus vellet, cūr nōn venīret ad sē,** *Cæsar replied, if Ariovistus wanted anything, why did he not come to him.*

2. DIRECT. **Venī sī vīs,** *come, if you wish.*

   INDIRECT (primary tense). **Amīcus tuus dīcit, veniās sī velīs,** *your friend says (that) you may come if you wish.*

   (secondary tense). **Caesar dīxit Ariovistus venīret sī vellet,** *Cæsar said (that) Ariovistus might come if he wished.*

3. DIRECT. **Sī aderat Titus, puer bene fēcit,** *If Titus was present, the boy did well.*

   INDIRECT (primary tense). **Dīcō sī adfuerit Titus bene puerum fēcisse,** *I say that if Titus was present, the boy did well.*

   (secondary tense). **Dīxī sī adfuisset Titus bene puerum fēcisse,** *I said that if Titus was present, the boy did well* (at some time before I said it).

4. DIRECT. **Cum Titus adest, puer bene facit,** *when Titus is present, the boy does well.*

   INDIRECT (primary tense). **Dīcō cum Titus adsit bene puerum facere,** *I say that when Titus is present, the boy does well.*

   (secondary tense). **Dīxī cum Titus adesset bene puerum facere,** *I said that when Titus was present, the boy did well.*

Notice the moods. Notice also how the tenses differ in the different sentences. Observe that the first and second persons of the Direct Discourse are usually changed (in Latin as in English) to the third person in the Indirect Discourse.

358. RULE. — *In Indirect Discourse, questions, commands, and subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive.*

359. RULE. — *If the verb of* saying, *etc., introducing the Indirect Discourse is in a primary tense, the subjunctives are present or perfect; if it is in a secondary tense, the subjunctives are imperfect or pluperfect.*

NOTE. — As the subjunctive lacks the future and future perfect tenses, the future indicative of the Direct Discourse is represented by the present or imperfect subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, and the future perfect indicative by the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive. So **sī aderō, bene erit,** *if I am* (i.e. *shall be*) *present, it will be well,* becomes, if quoted indirectly, **dīcit sī adsit bene futūrum esse,** *he says that if he is present, it will be well,* or (using a secondary tense) **dīxit sī adesset bene futūrum esse.**

360. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dux exīstimāvit mīlitēs, sī vellent, vincere posse. 2. Vōbīs dīcō, sī laudārī velītis, fortēs sītis. 3. Magistrātūs dīxērunt Caesarem sī Britannōs vīcisset in Galliam reversūrum esse. 4. Magistrātuī nūntiatum est omnēs hostium legiōnēs in Ītaliam revertisse. 5. Dux mīlitibus dīxit, sī hostibus resistere vellent, mūnītiōnēs cōnficerent. 6. Nūntiātum est portam, cum Labiēnus ad mūnītiōnēs pervēnisset, iam occupātam esse ā Gallīs. 7. Lēgātus intellēxit peditēs in castra sē receptūrōs esse nisi quis auxiliō eīs venīret. 8. Centuriōnibus dīxit, cum mūnītiōnēs iam cōnfectae essent, castrīs mīlitēs continērent. 9. Imperātor, cum hiemem iam adesse cōgnōvisset, in hīberna legiōnēs dūxit. 10. Nūntiātum est hostēs, cum

vincere nōn potuissent, prīmā vigiliā salūtem fugā petītūrōs esse.

II. 1. Fight bravely if you wish to be praised. 2. The general said that the soldiers must fight bravely if they wished to be praised. 3. When the messenger had arrived at the town he went to the magistrates. 4. He told the magistrates that when the camp was taken the Gauls had sought safety in flight. 5. The magistrates replied, that since the Gauls had been conquered, they would receive the Romans in (into) the city. 6. When the messenger had returned to the army, he reported that the magistrates would not resist. 7. Having heard this, the general said that he should move the camp at daybreak, since he had done all (the things) on account of which he had come. 8. He thought that, since the leaders of the enemy had been slain, his soldiers would be safe in the city. 9. When the army had been led into the city, the general called the magistrates to him. 10. He said that since they had received him and his soldiers in the city, he counted (held, *habēre*) them in the number of his friends.

361. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, I. 50, 51.]

Proximō diē Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra Caesaris minōra oppūgnāret, mīsit. Diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus in castra redūxit (*led back*). Cum ex captīvīs Caesar quaereret quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō contendere nōn vellet, hanc reperiēbat causam: apud Germānōs eam cōnsuētūdinem (*custom*) esse, ut mātrēsfamiliae (*matrons*) eōrum sortibus (*by lots*) et vāticinātiōnibus (*by*

prophecies) dēclārārent (*dēclārō, declare*) utrum (*whether*) proelium committere dēbērent necne (*or not*); eās ita dīcere: Germānōs superātūrōs nōn esse, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent. Posterō diē Caesar praesidium castrīs relīquit (*left*); ipse triplicī aciē īnstrūctā (see note on last reading lesson) ad castra hostium accēssit (*went close up*). Germānī coāctī sunt cōpiās suās castrīs ēdūcere. Omnem aciem carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs (*hope*) fugae relinquerētur. In carrīs mulierēs stābant quae eōs hortābantur ut fortiter pūgnārent.

CHAPTER LXII.

Participles. (*Review.*)

Ablative Absolute.

362. Review the participles and their declensions (p. 128).

363. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **duce vocante mīlitēs conveniunt,** { *the leader calling,* / *when the leader calls,* / *at the call of the leader,* } *the soldiers assemble.*

2. **Caesar bellō cōnfectō in castra rediit,** { *the war having been finished,* / *when* (or *after*) *the war was finished,* / *since the war was finished,* / *having finished the war,* } *Cæsar returned to camp.*

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

3. **equitibus fugientibus peditēs interfectī sunt,** { *the horsemen fleeing, when the horsemen fled, since the horsemen fled, on account of the flight of the horsemen,* } *the foot-soldiers were slain.*

4. **hōc factō conveniēmus,** { *this having been done, when this has been done, after doing this,* } *we shall assemble.*

5. **eō duce hostēs vīcistis,** { *he being leader, when he was leader, under his leadership, with him as leader,* } *you conquered the enemy.*

6. **parte aestātis reliquā domō exībunt,** { *part of the summer remaining, since part of the summer remains, if part of the summer remains,* } *they will go out from home.*

Notice that in 1, 2, 3, and 4 a noun (or pronoun) and a participle in agreement with it are put in the ablative to designate the time or circumstances of the action expressed by the main verb. The place of the participle may be taken by a noun (*duce* in 5) or an adjective (*reliquā* in 6). The ablative used in this way is called the *ablative absolute.*

364. Rule. — *The ablative absolute is used to designate the time or circumstances of an action.*

365. In the use of the ablative absolute the following things are to be observed: —

1. The noun in the ablative is never the same as the subject or object of the main verb. If we wish to say in Latin, *the leader*

fled, having been defeated, we must say **dux victus fūgit**, for *leader* is the subject of fled, therefore *dux* must be the subject of *fūgit*, and the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative; then *having been defeated* modifies *leader*, therefore *victus* must modify *dux*, and must therefore be in the same case as *dux*, that is, in the nominative.

2. The ablative absolute may be translated in various ways; as (*a*), by the English absolute construction (**bellō cōnfectō**, *the war having been finished*); (*b*) by a temporal clause (**bellō cōnfectō**, *when the war was finished*); (*c*) by a concessive clause (**bellō cōnfectō**, *although the war was finished*); (*d*) by a condition (**bellō cōnfectō**, *if the war was finished*); (*e*) by various expressions suited to the sentence in which the ablative absolute stands (so **bellō cōnfectō**, *at the end of the war*, or *on the completion of the war*).

3. The ablative absolute is often used in Latin where an independent co-ordinate verb would be used in English; as, **Caesar, bellō cōnfectō, domum rediit**, *Cæsar finished the war and returned home.*

4. In Latin there is no perfect active participle. If therefore we wish to say in Latin, *Cæsar, having finished the war, returned to camp*, we cannot use, as in English, a participle in agreement with Cæsar, but instead, **Caesar, bellō cōnfectō, in castra rediit.** The same idea may, of course, be expressed by a clause with **cum**; as, **Caesar, cum bellum cōnfēcisset in castra rediit.** Deponent verbs have the perfect participle, and therefore offer no difficulty in translation. Thus *Cæsar, having exhorted the soldiers, led them against the enemy* can be translated **Caesar mīlitēs cohortātus contrā hostēs dūxit.**

5. In Latin there is no present passive participle and no future passive participle. When an English sentence contains one of these participles, the idea must be expressed in Latin by a clause with **cum** (or some other conjunction) or the voice must be changed to the active.

366. VOCABULARY.

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, let go, lose, [**ā** + **mittō**].

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, think, suppose, believe.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, effect, accomplish, [**ec** (*for* **ex**, *changed to* **ef** *before following* **f**) + **faciō**].

persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade, induce, [**per** + **suādeō**, urge].

satis, *adv.*, enough.

spēs, speī, *f.*, hope, expectation.

sub, *prep. usually with abl., but after verbs of motion with acc.*, under, close to, at the foot of.

367. EXERCISES.

[Translate each ablative absolute in as many ways as you can.]

I. 1. Omnī spē āmissā Britannī ad mūnītiōnēs pervenīre contendērunt. 2. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs magistrātūs cīvibus persuāsērunt ut domō exīrent. 3. Caesar Britannīs victīs satis sē effēcisse arbitrātus est. 4. Mīlitēs satis sē effectūrōs exīstimābant sī pūgnā hostēs vincerent. 5. Hostēs turrī occupātā etiam ad castrōrum portam īre contendērunt. 6. Aeduī dīxērunt sē Caesaris imperia sustentūrōs esse sī Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīre prohibēret. 7. Gallī, cum tēla āmīsissent, dēditiōnem facere voluērunt. 8. Hōc Caesarī nūntiātō respondit sī vellet Ariovistus in colloquium venīre, venīret. 9. Hostibus ācriter sub mūrō pūgnantibus multī interfectī sunt. 10. Caesare imperātōre Rōmānī tōtius Galliae imperiō potītī sunt.

[Translate each sentence in at least two ways.]

II. 1. Since the tower was finished, he thought the camp was sufficiently fortified. 2. Since all hope was lost, they fled into the woods. 3. Leaving all their villages, the Helvetians tried to make a journey through the

territory of the Sequanians. 4. He persuaded the citizens to leave the towns and hasten into the provinces. 5. Even though their javelins were lost, nevertheless they fought long and sharply with their swords. 6. We have learned that when Gaul had been conquered by Cæsar, the Britons lived long under the power of the Roman people. 7. Thinking that enough had been accomplished, since the towers and the gates had been finished, he returned with his legions into the camp. 8. When Cæsar wished to return to Rome, after finishing the war, he left the cohorts in winter quarters. 9. I do not think that the general will return to the city if the legions are lost. 10. Even if the Britons should wish to fight after the loss of their leaders, the magistrates would persuade them to remain in their fortifications.

CHAPTER LXIII.

Gerund and Gerundive.

368. Learn the gerund and gerundive of amō, habeō, dūcō, audiō, and eō.

Notice that the gerund is declined as a neuter singular noun of the second declension, lacking the nominative and vocative cases, and that the gerundive is declined as a regular adjective of the first and second declensions.

The gerund is a *verbal noun*, the gerundive a *verbal adjective*.

369. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

GEN. **Mīlitēs pūgnandī fīnem fēcērunt,** *the soldiers made an end of fighting.*

DAT. **Locus pūgnandō idōneus erat,** *the place was suitable for fighting.*

ACC. **Nostrī ad pūgnandum convēnērunt,** *our men assembled for fighting (to fight).*

ABL. **Mīlitēs pūgnandō fortēs fīunt,** *soldiers are made brave by fighting.*

Notice that the gerund is used like the English verbal noun in *-ing*. The accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions. Instead of the nominative and accusative (without a preposition) of the gerund, the infinitive is used; as, **vidēre est crēdere,** *seeing is believing;* **dīcit vidēre esse crēdere,** *he says that seeing is believing.*

370. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

GEN.	**Potestās datur**	**urbem capiendī,** / **urbis capiendae,**	*an opportunity of taking the city is offered.*
DAT.	**Est dux idōneus**	**urbem capiendō** (rare), / **urbī capiendae,**	*he is a leader suitable for taking the city.*
ACC.	**Vēnērunt**	**ad urbem capiendum** (rare), / **ad urbem capiendam,**	*they came to take (for taking) the city.*
ABL.	**Cōgitāmus**	**dē urbem capiendō** (rare), / **dē urbe capiendā,**	*we are thinking about taking the city.*

Notice that in the above sentences the gerund takes an object like the finite verb. The gerund itself is in the case required by the noun, adjective, or other word upon which it depends.

371. RULE. — *The gerund is, as a noun, governed by other words; as a verb, it may take an object in the proper case.*

Notice that the *gerundive* agrees with its noun like any other adjective. The noun itself is in the case required by the noun, adjective, or other word upon which it depends.

It is only when the gerund would take an object in the accusative that the gerundive can be used instead. The two constructions are both admissible in the genitive; in the other cases, the gerundive is usual.

372. RULE. — *Instead of the gerund with a direct object, the gerundive is generally used. The gerundive agrees in gender, number, and case with its noun, which stands in the case in which the gerund would have been.*

373. VOCABULARY.

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, open, [*perf. pass. partic. of* **aperiō**, open].

cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, *no supine*, stand together, stand firm, stop, halt, [**cōn** + **sistō** (*reduplicated form from* **stō**, stand)].

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, spy, see, behold, [**con** + **spic** (*for* **spec**, *a root denoting* sight) + **iō**].

ibĭ, *adv.*, there.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, command, order, *used with the dat. of the person to whom the command is given followed by* **ut** *or* **nē** *with the subjunctive.*

retinēō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold back, retain, [**re**, back; **teneō**, hold].

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield.

374. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Scūtīs āmissīs tamen cōnstitērunt ad portam dēfendendam. 2. Dīxērunt ibi sē mānsūrōs esse ubi ad castra dēfendenda cōnstitissent. 3. Centuriōnibus imperāvit ut dē turribus cōnficiendīs cōgitārent. 4. Amīcō

nostrō persuādeāmus nē spem oppidī capiendī āmittat. 5. Satis effectum esse arbitror sī lēgātī ad pācem petendam missī sunt. 6. Cum nostrōs ad pūgnam convenientēs cōnspexissent, tempus pūgnandī vēnisse exīstimāvērunt. 7. Etiam sub imperiō Populī Rōmānī, Gallī retinērī nōn poterant nē inter sē contenderent. 8. Hīs rēbus factīs nostrī ad flūmen trānseundum profectī sunt. 9. Helvētiī dē itinere per Sēquanōrum fīnēs faciendō ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt. 10. Hīs ille respondit sē nūllī potestātem itineris per prōvinciam faciendī datūrum esse.

II. 1. This place is not suitable for fortifying a camp. 2. When the gate was opened, he commanded us to go against the enemy. 3. Having seized the mountain, they halted there to wait (for waiting) for the general. 4. When they beheld the legions going out from the camp, they thought that an opportunity of making an attack was offered (given). 5. They placed towers at the gates for defending the town. 6. Although all hope of taking the town was lost, still they did not flee, but remained there all night. 7. When the general commanded them to halt there, they did not obey the command. 8. He said many things about taking cities and conquering enemies. 9. If you should say anything about making peace, you would lose the friendship of the consul. 10. Cæsar crossed into Britain to find out (for finding out) the customs of the Britons.

375. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, I. 52, 53.]

Caesar ā dextrō cornū, quod (*because*) eam partem minimē fīrmam (*strong*) hostium animadverterat, proe-

lium commīsit. Ita ācriter nostrī in hostēs sīgnō datō impetum fēcērunt itaque celeriter hostēs prōcurrērunt (*ran forward*) ut spatium (*room, space*) pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Gladiīs pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter. Tandem Germānī victī fūgērunt, neque prius[1] fugere dēstitērunt (perf. of *dēsistō, cease*) quam[1] ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi paucī flūmine trānsitō sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus. Reliquōs omnēs equitātus noster interfēcit. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, quae in eā fugā periērunt (*perished*). Duārum fīliārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. Gāius Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā traherētur (*trahō, -ere, drag*) in ipsum Caesarem incidit, et Mārcus Metius repertus et ad eum reductus (*brought back*) est.

CHAPTER LXIV.

Supine.

Expressions of Purpose.

376. Learn the supines of the regular and irregular verbs.

377. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

vēnērunt aquam petītum, *they came to seek water.*
missus est rem renūntiātum, *he was sent to report the matter.*

[1] **prius . . . quam**, *sooner . . . than*, i.e. *until.*

378. Rule. — *The supine in* -um (*accusative supine*) *is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

Note. — The most frequent use of the supine in *-um* is with the verb **eō**, especially with the impersonal infinitive passive; as, **amātum īrī**. This is the simplest way of forming the future infinitive passive. (For a more usual way of expressing the idea of the future infinitive passive, see the following chapter.)

379. Other ways of expressing purpose have already been given. *They came to seek water* may be expressed as follows: —

vēnērunt ut aquam peterent (*ut* and the subjunctive, **311**).
vēnērunt quī aquam peterent (relative and the subjunctive, **311**).
vēnērunt ad aquam petendam (gerundive with *ad*, **370**).
vēnērunt aquam petītum (accusative supine as above).

Instead of the gerundive with *ad* the gerund may be used, but only when the verb is intransitive; as, **vēnērunt ad mihi respondendum**, *they came to reply to me.*

380. Purpose may also be expressed by the gerund or gerundive in the genitive followed by **causā** (or **grātiā**), *for the sake of*: —

vēnērunt aquae petendī causā (grātiā).
vēnērunt aquae petendae causā (grātiā).

Causā and **grātiā** are the ablatives of **causa**, *cause*, and **grātia**, *favor, influence.* They are used with the genitive as prepositions are used with the accusative and ablative, but when so used they are *always placed after the genitive.*

381. The future participle is also occasionally used to express purpose; as, **vēnērunt aquam petītūrī**, *they came about to seek water*, i.e. *they came to seek water.*

What are the eight ways of expressing purpose in Latin?

382. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

facile est factū, *it is easy to do.*
difficile est dictū, *it is hard to tell.*

383. RULE. — *The supine in* **-ū** (*ablative supine*) *is used with adjectives* (*and a few other words*) *to limit their meaning.*

384. VOCABULARY.

grātia, -ae, *f.*, influence, favor (*abl.* **grātiā** for the sake of, *with gen. like* **causā**).
quantus, -a, -um, *adj., rel. and inter.*, how great.
animadvertō, -ere, -ī, -sum, notice, perceive, [**anim** (*of* **animus**) + **ad** + **vertō** (turn) turn the mind to].
coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw together, hurl together, [**con** + **iaciō**].
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, repel, repulse, defeat.
nam, *conj.*, for.
quidem, indeed, at least, *especially* **nē . . . quidem**, not even.

385. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hōc animadversō Caesar imperāvit ut ibi cōnsisterent. 2. Incrēdibile dictū est quantā celeritāte ad tēla conicienda convēnissent. 3. Orgetorīx apud Helvētiōs plūrimum valēbat grātiā et animī māgnitūdine, nam nihil esse arbitrātī sunt quod efficere nōn posset. 4. Gallī nē scūtīs quidem āmissīs omnem spem āmīsērunt. 5. Helvētiī proeliō pulsī lēgātōs ad Caesarem pācem petītum mīsērunt. 6. Cum Procillum venientem cōnspexisset portā apertā ad eum contendit. 7. Lēgātōs, quī ad pācem petendam vēnerant, apud sē retinuit nē domum reverterentur. 8. Nam verēbātur nē, sī domum revertissent, Gallīs persuādērent ut ad impetum in castra faciendum convenīrent. 9. Mihi quidem satis erit sī bene

āc celeriter eās rēs cōnfēceritis ad quās cōnficiendās vōs convocāvī. 10. Hōc sī optimum factū est faciāmus. 11. Haec quidem dīcere volēbam ut intellegerētis. Sed satis dictum est.

[Translate the purpose clauses in various ways.]

II. 1. Let us go to seek aid. I think this is the best (thing) to do. 2. When he had noticed that the Gauls had hurled their javelins, he ordered his (men) to make a charge. 3. Not even when the enemy were repulsed did he dare to halt there. 4. When the leaders of the enemy perceived this, they encouraged (strengthened the spirits of) their men to fight. 5. We have come to you, not to fight, but to make peace. 6. Cæsar had great influence among the Gauls, for they understood how great his power was. 7. Those who had been sent to learn the nature of the place, reported that it was suitable for making a camp. 8. Scouts came for the purpose of seeing the army and reporting to their chiefs. 9. Having noticed this, Cæsar retained them in the camp. 10. Envoys were sent to the general to seek peace, in order to put (make) an end to (of) the war. 11. The general replied to them that he had come to conquer the Gauls. 12. Having heard this, the chiefs of the Gauls called their (men) together and encouraged them to fight.

CHAPTER LXV.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

Dative of Agent.

386. Examine the following: —

PRES.	**amātūrus sum**, *I am about to love* (or, *I am going to love*).
IMPERF.	**amātūrus eram**, *I was about to love.*
FUT.	**amātūrus erō**, *I shall be about to love.*
PERF.	**amātūrus fuī**, *I have been (was) about to love.*
PLUPERF.	**amātūrus fueram**, *I had been about to love.*
FUT. PERF.	**amātūrus fuerō**, *I shall have been about to love.*

The future active participle is combined in this way with all the moods and tenses of **sum**. The combination is called the *First Periphrastic Conjugation*. The tenses are called *present*, *imperfect*, etc., according to the tense of **sum** employed.

The future active participle of any verb, with the present indicative of **sum**, has substantially the same meaning as the future active indicative. The two expressions, **amābō** and **amātūrus sum**, are equivalents. But for the other forms given above, there are no simple equivalents.

387. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

nōn dubitō quīn amātūrus sit, *I do not doubt that he will (is about to) love.*

quaesīvī quid factūrus esset, *I asked what he was going to do.*

Notice that the First Periphrastic Conjugation supplies a future tense for the subjunctive mood.

The regular future active infinitive (as **amātūrus esse**) is evidently a part of the First Periphrastic Conjugation, being formed of the future active participle and the infinitive of **sum**.

The future passive infinitive is also frequently formed with the aid of **sum**. For this purpose, the future infinitive of **sum** is used; but the form employed is almost invariably **fore**, not **futūrum esse**. When thus used, **fore** is followed by **ut** and the subjunctive; as, —

crēdō fore ut amētur, *I believe that he will be loved* (*that it will be* or *will come to pass that he is loved*).

putābam fore ut liber scrīberētur, *I thought that the book would be written* (*that it would be* or *would come to pass that the book was written*).

The future infinitive passive in Indirect Discourse is usually formed in this way.

388. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

PRES. **amandus sum**, *I am to be loved, I ought to* (*must*) *be loved, it is necessary that I be loved.*

IMPERF. **amandus eram**, *I was to be loved, I ought to have been loved, it was necessary that I be loved.*

FUT. **amandus erō**, *I ought* (*hereafter*) *to be loved, it will be necessary that I be loved.*

PERF. **amandus fuī**, *I have been* (*was*) *to be loved, I ought to have been loved, it was necessary that I be loved.*

The other moods (except the imperative) and tenses of **sum** are also used in combination with the gerundive, forming the *Second Periphrastic Conjugation.*

Observe that the Second Periphrastic Conjugation is *passive*, and involves the idea of *necessity* or *obligation.*

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

389. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

hōc mihi faciendum est, *this must be done by me*, or I *must do this.*

intellēxit pontem sibi faciendum esse, *he understood that a bridge must be built by him*, or *that he must build a bridge.*

Observe that the person by whom the action is to be performed is put in the dative. This is called the *dative of agent.*

390. RULE. — *With the gerundive expressing obligation, the dative is used to denote the person upon whom the obligation rests.*

391. VOCABULARY.

autem, *conj.*, but, however, (*the second word in its clause*).

coepī, coepisse, began (*only the tenses formed from the perfect stem exist*), *followed by the infinitive.*

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, be accustomed, [**con** + **suēscō**].

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, show, explain, demonstrate, [**dē** + **mōnstrō**, show].

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, go out, come out, [**ē** + **gredior** (*for* **gradior**, step, go)].

fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune.

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, go forward, advance, [**prō** + **gradior**].

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give over, hand over, give up, [**trā** (*for* **trāns**, across *or* over) + *a shortened form of* **da**, *the root of* **dō**, give].

392. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ibi nōbīs cōnsistendum est ubi imperātor ut cōnsistāmus imperat. 2. Imperāvit autem ut sub mūrō cōnsisterēmus, nam animadverterat hostēs prōgressūrōs esse. 3. Portā ad ēgrediendum apertā, tamen mīlitēs in castrīs retinuit. 4. Scūta et pīla nostra trādenda sunt, animōs autem semper retinēbimus. 5. Ibi multīs lapidibus in ūnum locum coniectīs mūrum facere coepērunt.

6. Omnia dēmōnstrāvī quae mihi dēmōnstranda erant. 7. Quaesīvit num mīlitēs quōs in silvā cōnspexisset ēgressūrī essent. 8. Helvētiī quidem pulsī sunt, Germānī autem vincendī sunt. 9. Dīscipulīs multa facienda sunt ad grātiam apud magistrum petendam. 10. Dīxit fore ut castra trāderentur, cum mīlitēs pulsī essent. 11. Intellegendum est quanta fortūnae sit potestās. 12. Quaerō quid factūrī sītis ut apud cīvēs grātiā valeātis. 13. Cōnsuēscunt hominēs multa facere quae facienda nōn sunt. 14. Ducī mīlitum animī ad pūgnandum cōnfīrmandī sunt.

II. 1. The Britons were accustomed to choose leaders when they were about to go out from their territories. 2. Influence and power ought to be sought, but friendship is better. 3. I do not doubt that the enemy will advance with great spirit. 4. Since the enemy have begun to build (*make*) a wall, we must go out against them. 5. You say that you have come to seek peace, but peace must not be made unless you give up (your) arms. 6. Cæsar explains in the first book with what great (how great) peoples he had to fight (it was to be fought by him). 7. When the general perceived the shields of the enemy in the wood, he understood that he must go out to fight. 8. Not even his enemies doubt that Cæsar will conquer the Gauls. 9. We must throw all our shields together in(to) one place, but must retain our swords in our hands. 10. You must not go out; for your father ordered you to remain at home.

393. READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, Book I. 54.]

Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī (*Suebī*, a German tribe) quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum re-

vertī coepērunt, quōs Ubiī (another tribe), quī proximī Rhēnum[1] incolunt, territōs secūtī, māgnum ex hīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō (*a little*) quam tempus annī pōstulābat in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit (*led away*); hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem (*nearer*[2]) Galliam ad conventūs (*circuit courts*[3]) agendōs profectus est.

---

[1] **Rhēnum**: the accusative is often used after **proximus**.

[2] *Nearer*, or *Hither Gaul* was Gaul nearer Rome; *i.e.* the northern part of what is now Italy.

[3] Cæsar was governor of Gaul, and holding courts was one of his duties.

SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT-READING.

[Words not in the vocabularies are given in the foot-notes.]

394. *Respect to Age.*

Lȳsander[1] Lacedaemonius[2] hōc dīxisse dīcitur: "Lacedaemone[3] optimē vīvere possunt senēs. Nusquam[4] enim[5] tantam habent auctōritātem." Athēnīs ōlim[6] lūdīs[7] īnstitūtīs[8] quīdam in theātrum[9] senex vēnit, nec eī locus datus est ā suīs cīvibus; tum[10] ad lēgātōs Lacedaemoniōs accēssit[11]; hī autem omnēs cōnsurrēxēre[12] et senī locum dedērunt. Hōc factum[13] probantibus[14] Athēniēnsibus,[15] ūnus ē lēgātīs[16] dīxit, "Athēniēnsēs sciunt quidem rēcta[17] facere, sed facere nōlunt.

[1] *Lysander*, a man's name. [2] *Lacedæmonian.* [3] *At Lacedæmon.* [4] *Nowhere.* [5] *For* (conj., postpositive). [6] *Once upon a time.* [7] *Games.* [8] Perf. part. of **īnstituō**, *arrange, put in order.* Here **lūdīs īnstitūtīs**, *when a play was to be given.* [9] *Theatre.* [10] *Then.* [11] *Approached.* [12] *Rose up at once.* [13] *Act.* [14] *Approving* (pres. part. of **probō**, 1). [15] *The Athenians.* [16] Instead of the partitive genitive, the abl. with **ē** or **ex** may be used. [17] *Right* (n. pl.).

395. *A Retort.*

Vēnit ōlim[1] quīdam ad Aristippum philosophum[2] eīque dīxit: "Vīsne fīlium meum artēs tuās docēre[3]?" Respondit Aristippus: "Hōc equidem[4] faciam acceptīs[5] duōbus talentīs.[6]" Pater autem prētiō[7] territus, dīxit:

"At servum minōris[8] emere[9] possum." Contrā[10] Aristippus, "Fac[11] hōc: ita duōs servōs habēbis."

[1] *Once.* [2] *Philosopher.* [3] *Teach.* [4] *Certainly.* [5] Perf. part. of **accipiō**, *receive.* [6] *Talents*, a sum of money. [7] *Price.* [8] *For less* (genitive, denoting an indefinite price). [9] *Buy.* [10] *In reply.* [11] Imperative of **faciō**.

396. *An Honorable People.*

Themistoclēs[1] ōlim[2] pūgnā nāvālī[3] victīs Persīs[4] Athēnīs apud conciōnem[5] dīxit: "Cōnsilium in animō habeō: hōc ūtile[6] reīpūblicae erit, cēlārī tamen oportet.[7] Ūnī ē prīmōribus[8] rem dīcere volō." Aristīdēs[9] ad hōc mūnus[10] dēlēctus est. Huīc dīxit Themistoclēs: "Lacedaemoniōrum classis[11] in ancorīs[12] in portū est. Hanc clam[13] incendere[14] poterimus. Ita illōrum potestās nāvālis[3] dēlēbitur.[15]" Hīs audītīs Aristīdēs reversus apud conciōnem[5] dīxit: "Themistoclis cōnsilium ūtile quidem, sed minimē[16] honestum[17] est." Itaque Athēniēnsēs nē audītum quidem cōnsilium sprēvērunt.[18]

[1] An Athenian statesman. [2] *Once.* [3] *Naval.* [4] *Persians.* [5] *Assembly.* [6] *Useful.* [7] *Must, is necessary.* [8] *The chief men.* Instead of a partitive genitive, the abl. with **ē** is used. [9] A prominent Athenian. [10] *Duty.* [11] *Fleet.* [12] *Anchors.* Here in **ancorīs**, *at anchor.* [13] *Secretly.* [14] *Set on fire.* [15] **Dēleō**, 2, *destroy.* [16] *Not at all.* [17] *Honorable.* [18] *Rejected.*

397. *The Ass and the Wolf.*

Ad asinum[1] gravī morbō[2] aegrum[3] sociī vēnērunt, ut quid ageret[4] vidērent. Inter aliōs lupus[5] quoque[6] vēnit. Quī cum corpus ēius tangeret,[7] et interrogāvisset,[8] quae corporis partēs māximē dolērent, asinus respondit: "Eae partēs corporis māximē dolent, quās tū tangis.[7]"

[1] *Ass.* [2] *Disease.* [3] *Sick.* [4] *What he was doing*, i.e. *how he did.* [5] *Wolf.* [6] *Also.* [7] *Touched* (**tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum**). [8] *Had asked.*

398. *The Lion's Share.*

Cum leō[1] vēnātum[2] īret, sociī ēius erant canis[3] et lupus.[4] Leō cum partēs praedae[5] aequālēs[6] factae essent, ita locūtus est[7]: "Prīmam partem capiō, quia[8] rēx vester sum; secundam, quia[8] fortis sum mihi dabitis; tertiam quī[9] tetigerit[10] mē inimīcum sibi habēbit. Ita leō tōtam praedam[5] sōlus abstulit.[11] Haec fābula docet, quam[12] perīculōsum[13] sit societātēs[14] cum potentiōribus inīre.[15]

[1] *Lion.* [2] *To hunt* (supine of **vēnor, 1, dep.**). [3] *Dog.* [4] *Wolf.* [5] *Booty.* [6] *Equal.* [7] *Spoke* (**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum**). [8] *Because.* [9] *Whoever.* [10] From **tangō**, *touch.* [11] *Took away* [**auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, (ab + ferō)**]. [12] *How.* [13] *Dangerous.* [14] *Alliances.* [15] *Enter into* (**in + eō**).

399. *Julius Cæsar.*

[Adapted from Eutropius, Book VI. 17–25.]

1. Annō urbis conditae[1] sēscentēsimō nōnāgēsimō tertiō Gāius Iūlius Caesar, quī posteā[2] imperāvit[3] cum Lūciō Bibulō[4] cōnsul est factus. Is prīmō[5] vīcit Helvētiōs, quī nunc Sēquanī appellantur, deinde[6] vincendō per bella gravissima usque ad[7] Oceanum Britannicum[8] prōcēssit.[9] Domuit[10] autem annīs novem ferē omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Oceanum est. Britannīs mox[11] bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmānōrum cōgnitum erat, et eōs quoque[12] victōs obsidibus acceptīs[13] stīpendiāriōs[14] fēcit. Galliae autem tribūtum[15] imperāvit, Germānōsque multīs proeliīs vīcit.

[1] *In the year of the founded city*, i.e. *since the foundation of the city.* Rome was founded B.C. 753. [2] *Afterwards.* [3] *Was emperor.* [4] The Romans elected two consuls annually. [5] *First*, i.e. *at first.* [6] *Next.* [7] **Usque ad**, *even to, as far as.* [8] *The British Ocean*, now called the North Sea. [9] *Advanced.* [10] *Subdued.* [11] *Presently.* [12] *Also.* [13] Perf. part. of **accipiō**, *receive.* [14] *Tributaries.* [15] *Tribute.*

2. Hinc[1] iam bellum cīvīle[2] succēssit[3] quō populī Rōmānī fortūna mūtāta[4] est. Caesar enim[5] rediēns ex Galliā victor coepit pōscere[6] alterum[7] cōnsulātum.[8] Contrādictum est[9] ā Marcellō cōnsule, ā Bibulō, ā Pompēiō, ā Catōne, iūssusque[10] dīmissīs exercitibus ad urbem redīre. Propter quam[11] iniūriam ab Ariminō,[12] ubi mīlitēs suōs habēbat, adversum[13] patriam cum exercitū vēnit. Cōnsulēs cum Pompēiō senātusque omnis atque ūniversa[14] nōbilitās[15] ex urbe fūgit et in Graeciam trānsiit. Ibi Pompēiō duce senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parāvit.

[1] *Hence.* [2] *Civil.* [3] *Succeeded, followed.* [4] *Changed.* [5] *For* (conj., postpositive). [6] *To demand.* [7] *A second.* [8] *Consulship.* [9] *It was spoken against*, i.e. *opposition was made.* [10] Supply **Caesar** and **est**. [11] The relative is often used in Latin where we use a demonstrative. [12] *From about Ariminum*, a place in Northern Italy. [13] *Against.* [14] *Entire.* [15] *Nobility.*

3. Caesar vacuam[1] urbem ingressus[2] dictātōrem[3] sē fēcit. Inde[4] Hispāniās[5] petiit. Ibi Pompēī exercitūs validissimōs[6] et fortissimōs cum tribus ducibus superāvit. Inde[4] regressus[7] in Graeciam trānsiit, adversum[8] Pompēium dīmicāvit.[9] Prīmō proeliō victus est et fugātus,[10] ēvāsit[11] tamen quia[12] nocte interveniente[13] Pompēius sequī nōluit, dīxitque Caesar, nec Pompēium scīre vincere, et illō tantum[14] diē sē potuisse superārī. Deinde[15] in Thessaliā apud Pharsālum[16] ingentibus cōpiīs dīmicāvērunt.[9]

[1] *Empty*, i.e. with the senate and nobility gone. [2] *Having entered* (perf. part. of **ingredior**). [3] *Dictator.* [4] *Thence.* [5] Spain was divided into two provinces by the Romans, hence the plural. [6] Superl. of **validus**, *strong.* [7] *Having returned* (perf. part. of **regredior**). [8] *Against.* [9] *Fought.* [10] *Put to flight* (from **fugō**, 1). [11] *Escaped* (from **ēvādō**). [12] *Because.* [13] From **interveniō**, *come between, intervene.* [14] *Only.* [15] *Next.* [16] *Near Pharsalus in Thessaly.*

4. Nunquam[1] Rōmānae cōpiae neque māiōrēs neque meliōribus ducibus convēnerant. Pūgnātum est diū et ācriter, victusque ad postrēmum[2] Pompēius[3] et castra ēius dīrepta[4] sunt. Ipse fugātus[5] Alexandrīam[6] petiit, ut ā rēge Aegyptī, cuī tūtor[7] ā senātū datus fuerat propter iuvenīlem[8] ēius aetātem,[9] acciperet[10] auxilia. Quī fortūnam magis quam amīcitiam secūtus[11] occīdit Pompēium, caput ēius et anulum[12] Caesarī mīsit. Quō cōnspectō Caesar lacrimās[13] fūdisse[14] dīcitur.

[1] *Never.* After this, **neque ... neque** must be rendered by *either ... or.* [2] *At last.* [3] Supply **est.** [4] *Plundered* (from **dīripiō**). [5] *Put to flight* (from **fugō**, 1). [6] *Alexandria*, a large seaport in Egypt. [7] *Guardian.* [8] *Youthful, juvenile.* [9] *Age.* [10] From **accipiō** (**ad** + **capiō**), *receive.* [11] *Following*, i.e. *paying respect to.* [12] *Ring.* A seal ring, to prove his identity. [13] *Tears.* [14] Perf. inf. of **fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum**, *pour*, here *shed.*

5. Mox[1] Caesar Alexandrīam vēnit. Ipsī[2] quoque[3] Ptolemaeus[4] parāre voluit īnsidiās,[5] quā causā rēgī bellum illātum est. Eō victō Caesar Alexandrīā potītus rēgnum Cleopatrae dedit, Ptolemaeī sorōrī. Inde[7] rediēns Caesar Pharnacem[6] quī multās populī Rōmānī prōvinciās occupābat, proeliō vīcit, et ad mortem coēgit. Inde[7] Rōmam regressus[8] tertiō[9] sē cōnsulem fēcit. Inde[7] in Africam profectus est, ubi multī nōbilēs, quōrum ducēs prīncipēs erant reī pūblicae, bellum reparāverant.[10] Contrā hōs commissō proeliō victor fuit Caesar. Ducēs eōrum aut ipsī sē occīdērunt aut ā Caesare interfectī sunt.

[1] *Presently.* [2] Supply **Caesarī**, *against Cæsar himself.* [3] *Also.* [4] The king of Egypt mentioned above. [5] *Treachery*, i.e. he wished to murder him. [6] A king of Pontus. [7] *Thence.* [8] *Having returned* (from **regredior**). [9] *For the third time.* [10] *Had renewed* [from **reparō** (**re** + **parō**)].

6. Post annum Caesar Rōmam regressus[1] quārtō[2] sē cōnsulem fēcit et statim[3] ad Hispāniās est profectus, ubi Pompēī fīliōs, Gnaeum et Sextum, quī ingēns bellum reparāverant,[4] apud Mundam cīvitātem māgnō proeliō superāvit. Ex Pompēī fīliīs māior occīsus est, minor fūgit. Inde[5] Caesar bellīs cīvīlibus[6] tōtō orbe[7] compositīs[8] Rōmam rediit. Agere īnsolentius[9] coepit et contrā cōnsuētūdinem[10] Rōmānae lībertātis.[11] Haec cum diūtius ferre nōn possent coniūrātiōnem[12] in eum fēcērunt multī senātōrēs[13] equitēsque[14] Rōmānī. Prīncipēs fuērunt inter coniūrātōs[15] duo Brūtī, ex eō genere[16] Brūtī, quī prīmus Rōmae cōnsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat,[17] Gāius Cassius et Servilius Casca. Ergō[18] Caesar, cum senātūs diē inter cēterōs[19] vēnisset ad cūriam,[20] vīgintī tribus vulneribus cōnfossus est.[21]

[1] *Having returned.* [2] *For the fourth time.* [3] *Immediately.* [4] *Had renewed.* [5] *Thence, then.* [6] *Civil.* [7] *World (orb of the earth).* [8] *Put to rest, finished* (con + pōnō). [9] *More arrogantly.* [10] *Custom,* i.e. *contrary to the free institutions of the Romans.* [11] *Liberty.* [12] *Conspiracy.* [13] *Senators.* [14] *Knights.* [15] *Conspirators.* [16] *Family.* [17] *Had driven out.* [18] *Therefore, so.* [19] *The rest.* [20] *The senate house.* [21] *Was pierced, stabbed to death.*

REGULAR VERBS.

First Conjugation.

400. Principal Parts: **Amō, amārē, amāvī, amātum.**

Stem: **amā-.**

Indicative.

Active Voice.		**Passive Voice.**	
PRESENT.			
I love, am loving, do love, etc.		*I am loved*, etc.	
amō	amāmus	amor	amāmur
amās	amātis	amāris *or* -re	amāminī
amat	amant	amātur	amantur
IMPERFECT.			
I loved, was loving, did love, etc.		*I was loved*, etc.	
amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris *or* -re	amābāminī
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur
FUTURE.			
I shall love, etc.		*I shall be loved*, etc.	
amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis *or* -re	amābiminī
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur
PERFECT.			
I have loved, I loved, etc.		*I have been (was) loved*, etc.	
amāvī	amāvimus	amātus { sum / es / est	amātī { sumus / estis / sunt
amāvistī	amāvistis		
amāvit	amāvērunt *or* -re		

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved, etc.		*I had been loved, etc.*	
amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus { eram / erās / erat	amātī { erāmus / erātis / erant
amāverās	amāverātis		
amāverat	amāverant		

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have loved, etc.		*I shall have been loved*, etc.	
amāverō	amāverimus	amātus { erō / eris / erit	amātī { erimus / eritis / erunt
amāveris	amāveritis		
amāverit	amāverint		

Subjunctive.[1]

PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris *or* -re	amēminī
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris *or* -re	amārēminī
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT.

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus { sim / sīs / sit	amātī { sīmus / sītis / sint
amāveris	amāveritis		
amāverit	amāverint		

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus { essem / essēs / esset	amātī { essēmus / essētis / essent
amāvissēs	amāvissētis		
amāvisset	amāvissent		

[1] No satisfactory translation for the subjunctive can be given in the paradigms. It must be learned from the exercises illustrating the uses of the subjunctive.

Active Voice.	Passive Voice.

Imperative.

PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.*	**amāre**, *be thou loved.*
amāte, *love ye.*	**amāminī**, *be ye loved.*

FUTURE.

amātō, *thou shalt love.*	**amātor**, *thou shalt be loved.*
amātō, *he shall love.*	**amātor**, *he shall be loved.*
amātōte, *you shall love.*	
amantō, *they shall love.*	**amantor**, *they shall be loved.*

Infinitive.

PRES.	**amāre**, *to love.*	**amārī**, *to be loved.*
PERF.	**amāvisse**, *to have loved.*	**amātus esse**, *to have been loved.*
FUT.	**amātūrus esse**, *to be about to love.*	**amātum īrī**, *to be about to be loved.*

Participles.

PRES.	**amāns, -antis**, *loving.*	PERF.	**amātus, -a, -um**, *having been loved.*
FUT.	**amātūrus, -a, -um**, *about to love.*		

Gerund.		*Gerundive.*
G.	**amandī**, *of loving.*	**amandus, -a, -um**, *to be loved.*
D.	**amandō**, *for loving.*	
AC.	**amandum**, *loving.*	
AB.	**amandō**, *by loving.*	

Supine.

AC.	**amātum**, *to love.*
AB.	**amātū**, *to love.*

401. Second Conjugation.

Principal Parts: **habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum,** *have, hold.*[1]
Stem: **habē-.**

Indicative.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
PRESENT.			
I hold, etc.		*I am held*, etc.	
habeō	habēmus	habeor	habēmur
habēs	habētis	habēris *or* -re	habēminī
habet	habent	habētur	habentur
IMPERFECT.			
I held, was holding, etc.		*I was held*, etc.	
habēbam	habēbāmus	habēbar	habēbāmur
habēbās	habēbātis	habēbāris *or* -re	habēbāminī
habēbat	habēbant	habēbātur	habēbantur
FUTURE.			
I shall hold, etc.		*I shall be held*, etc.	
habēbō	habēbimus	habēbor	habēbimur
habēbis	habēbitis	habēberis *or* -re	habēbiminī
habēbit	habēbunt	habēbitur	habēbuntur
PERFECT.			
I have held, etc.		*I have been held*, etc.	
habuī	habuimus	habitus { sum / es / est	habitī { sumus / estis / sunt
habuistī	habuistis		
habuit	habuērunt *or* -re		

[1] The meaning *have* is the more common, but *hold* is better adapted to the paradigm.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.			
		PLUPERFECT.			
I had held, etc.		*I had been held*, etc.			
habueram	habuerāmus	habitus eram	habitus erāmus	habitī eram	habitī erāmus
habuerās	habuerātis	habitus erās	habitus erātis	habitī erās	habitī erātis
habuerat	habuerant	habitus erat	habitus erant	habitī erat	habitī erant
		FUTURE PERFECT.			
I shall have held, etc.		*I shall have been held*, etc.			
habuerō	habuerimus	habitus erō	habitus erimus	habitī erō	habitī erimus
habueris	habueritis	habitus eris	habitus eritis	habitī eris	habitī eritis
habuerit	habuerint	habitus erit	habitus erunt	habitī erit	habitī erunt

Subjunctive.

	PRESENT.		
habeam	habeāmus	habear	habeāmur
habeās	habeātis	habeāris *or* -re	habeāminī
habeat	habeant	habeātur	habeantur
	IMPERFECT.		
habērem	habērēmus	habērer	habērēmur
habērēs	habērētis	habērēris *or* -re	habērēminī
habēret	habērent	habērētur	habērentur
	PERFECT.		
habuerim	habuerimus	habitus sim	habitī sīmus
habueris	habueritis	habitus sīs	habitī sītis
habuerit	habuerint	habitus sit	habitī sint
	PLUPERFECT.		
habuissem	habuissēmus	habitus essem	habitī essēmus
habuissēs	habuissētis	habitus essēs	habitī essētis
habuisset	habuissent	habitus esset	habitī essent

Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
Imperative.	
PRESENT.	
habē, *hold thou.*	habēre, *be thou held.*
habēte, *hold ye.*	habēminī, *be ye held.*
FUTURE.	
habētō, *thou shalt hold.*	habētor, *thou shalt be held.*
habētō, *he shall hold.*	habētor, *he shall be held.*
habētōte, *you shall hold.*	
habentō, *they shall hold.*	habentor, *they shall be held.*
Infinitive.	
PRES. habēre, *to hold.*	habērī, *to be held.*
PERF. habuisse, *to have held.*	habitus esse, *to have been held.*
FUT. habitūrus esse, *to be about to hold.*	habitum īrī, *to be about to be held.*
Participles.	
PRES. habēns, -entis, *holding.*	PERF. habitus, -a, -um, *having been held.*
FUT. habitūrus, -a, -um, *about to hold.*	

Gerund.	*Gerundive.*
G. habendī, *of holding.*	habendus, -a, -um, *to be held.*
D. habendō, *for holding.*	
AC. habendum, *holding.*	
AB. habendō, *by holding.*	

Supine.

AC. habitum, *to hold.*
AB. habitū, *to hold.*

Third Conjugation.

402. Principal Parts: **Dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum.**
Stem: **dūcĕ.**

Indicative.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
PRESENT.			
I lead, am leading, etc.		*I am led*, etc.	
dūcō	**dūcimus**	**dūcor**	**dūcimur**
dūcis	**dūcitis**	**dūceris** *or* **-re**	**dūciminī**
dūcit	**dūcunt**	**dūcitur**	**dūcuntur**
IMPERFECT.			
I led, was leading, etc.		*I was led, was being led*, etc.	
dūcēbam	**dūcēbāmus**	**dūcēbar**	**dūcēbāmur**
dūcēbās	**dūcēbātis**	**dūcēbāris** *or* **-re**	**dūcēbāminī**
dūcēbat	**dūcēbant**	**dūcēbātur**	**dūcēbantur**
FUTURE.			
I shall lead, etc.		*I shall be led*, etc.	
dūcam	**dūcēmus**	**dūcar**	**dūcēmur**
dūcēs	**dūcētis**	**dūcēris** *or* **-re**	**dūcēminī**
dūcet	**dūcent**	**dūcētur**	**dūcentur**
PERFECT.			
I led, have led, etc.		*I was led, have been led*, etc.	
dūxī	**dūximus**	**ductus** { **sum** / **es** / **est**	**ductī** { **sumus** / **estis** / **sunt**
dūxistī	**dūxistis**		
dūxit	**dūxērunt** *or* **-re**		

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
		PLUPERFECT.	
I had led, etc.		*I had been led*, etc.	
dūxeram	dūxerāmus	ductus eram	ductī erāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis	ductus erās	ductī erātis
dūxerat	dūxerant	ductus erat	ductī erant
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
I shall have led, etc.		*I shall have been led*, etc.	
dūxerō	dūxerimus	ductus erō	ductī erimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	ductus eris	ductī eritis
dūxerit	dūxerint	ductus erit	ductī erunt

Subjunctive.

		PRESENT.	
dūcam	dūcāmus	dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcās	dūcātis	dūcāris *or* -re	dūcāminī
dūcat	dūcant	dūcātur	dūcantur
		IMPERFECT.	
dūcerem	dūcerēmus	dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	dūcerēris *or* -re	dūcerēminī
dūceret	dūcerent	dūcerētur	dūcerentur
		PERFECT.	
dūxerim	dūxerimus	ductus sim	ductī sīmus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	ductus sīs	ductī sītis
dūxerit	dūxerint	ductus sit	ductī sint
		PLUPERFECT.	
dūxissem	dūxissēmus	ductus essem	ductī essēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis	ductus essēs	ductī essētis
dūxisset	dūxissent	ductus esset	ductī essent

Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
Imperative.	
PRESENT.	
dūc(e),[1] *lead thou.*	dūcere, *be thou led.*
dūcite, *lead ye.*	dūciminī, *be ye led.*
FUTURE.	
dūcitō, *thou shalt lead.*	dūcitor, *thou shalt be led.*
dūcitō, *he shall lead.*	dūcitor, *he shall be led.*
dūcitōte, *ye shall lead.*	
dūcuntō, *they shall lead.*	dūcuntor, *they shall be led.*
Infinitive.	
PRES. dūcere, *to lead.*	dūcī, *to be led.*
PERF. dūxisse, *to have led.*	ductus esse, *to have been led.*
FUT. ductūrus esse, *to be about to lead.*	ductum īrī, *to be about to be led.*
Participles.	
PRES. dūcēns, -entis, *leading.*	PERF. ductus, -a, -um, *having been led.*
FUT. ductūrus, -a, -um, *about to lead.*	
Gerund.	*Gerundive.*
G. dūcendī, *of leading.*	dūcendus, -a, -um, *to be led.*
D. dūcendō, *for leading.*	
AC. dūcendum, *leading.*	
AB. dūcendō, *by leading.*	
Supine.	
AC. ductum, *to lead.*	
AB. ductū, *to lead.*	

[1] Dūce would be the regular form, but the imperatives of dūcō, dīcō, faciō, and ferō lose the ending -e.

Fourth Conjugation.

403. Principal Parts: **Audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum.**
Stem: **audī.**

Indicative.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
PRESENT.			
I hear, am hearing, do hear, etc.		*I am heard*, etc.	
audiō	**audīmus**	**audior**	**audīmur**
audīs	**audītis**	**audīris** *or* **-re**	**audīminī**
audit	**audiunt**	**audītur**	**audiuntur**
IMPERFECT.			
I heard, was hearing, did hear, etc.		*I was heard*, etc.	
audiēbam	**audiēbāmus**	**audiēbar**	**audiēbāmur**
audiēbās	**audiēbātis**	**audiēbāris** *or* **-re**	**audiēbāminī**
audiēbat	**audiēbant**	**audiēbātur**	**audiēbantur**
FUTURE.			
I shall hear, etc.		*I shall be heard*, etc.	
audiam	**audiēmus**	**audiar**	**audiēmur**
audiēs	**audiētis**	**audiēris**	**audiēminī**
audiet	**audient**	**audiētur**	**audientur**
PERFECT.			
I have heard, I heard, etc.		*I have been (was) heard*, etc.	
audīvī	**audīvimus**	**audītus** { **sum** / **es** / **est**	**audītī** { **sumus** / **estis** / **sunt**
audīvistī	**audīvistis**		
audīvit	**audīvērunt** *or* **-re**		

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard, etc.		*I had been heard*, etc.	
audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus { eram / erās / erat	audītī { erāmus / erātis / erant
audīverās	audīverātis		
audīverat	audīverant		

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have heard, etc.		*I shall have been heard*, etc.	
audīverō	audīverimus	audītus { erō / eris / erit	audītī { erimus / eritis / erunt
audīveris	audīveritis		
audīverit	audīverint		

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris *or* -re	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris *or* -re	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus { sim / sīs / sit	audītī { sīmus / sītis / sint
audīveris	audīveritis		
audīverit	audīverint		

PLUPERFECT.

audīvissem	audīvissēmus	audītus { essem / essēs / esset	audītī { essēmus / essētis / essent
audīvissēs	audīvissētis		
audīvisset	audīvissent		

LIBRARY OF THE

Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
Imperative.	
PRESENT.	
audī, *hear thou.*	audīre, *be thou heard.*
audīte, *hear ye.*	audīminī, *be ye heard.*
FUTURE.	
audītō, *thou shalt hear.*	audītor, *thou shalt be heard.*
audītō, *he shall hear.*	audītor, *he shall be heard.*
audītōte, *ye shall hear.*	
audiuntō, *they shall hear.*	audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*
Infinitive.	
PRES. audīre, *to hear.*	audīrī, *to be heard.*
PERF. audīvisse, *to have heard.*	audītus esse, *to have been heard.*
FUT. audītūrus esse, *to be about to hear.*	audītum īrī, *to be about to be heard.*
Participles.	
PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*	PERF. audītus, -a, -um, *heard, having been heard.*
FUT. audītūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*	

Gerund.	*Gerundive.*
G. audiendī, *of hearing.*	audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*
D. audiendō, *for hearing.*	
AC. audiendum, *hearing.*	
AB. audiendō, *by hearing.*	

Supine.

AC. audītum, *to hear.*
AB. audītū, *to hear.*

Third Conjugation: Verbs in -iō.

404. Verbs of the third conjugation in *-iō* have some forms of the present stem like the fourth conjugation. Before *a, ō, u,* and *ē* they retain the *i* of the stem, but lose it elsewhere, except in the gerund and participle.

Principal Parts: **Capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.**
Stem: **capi.**

Indicative.

Active Voice.		**Passive Voice.**	
PRESENT.			
I take, am taking, do take, etc.		*I am taken,* etc.	
capiō	**capimus**	**capior**	**capimur**
capis	**capitis**	**caperis** *or* **-re**	**capiminī**
capit	**capiunt**	**capitur**	**capiuntur**
IMPERFECT.			
I took, was taking, did take, etc.		*I was taken,* etc.	
capiēbam, etc.		**capiēbar,** etc.	
FUTURE.			
I shall take, etc.		*I shall be taken,* etc.	
capiam	**capiēmus**	**capiar**	**capiēmur**
capiēs	**capiētis**	**capiēris** *or* **-re**	**capiēminī**
capiet	**capient**	**capiētur**	**capientur**
PERFECT.			
I have taken, took, etc.		*I have been (was) taken,* etc.	
cēpī, etc.		**captus sum,** etc.	

Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
Pluperfect.	
I had taken, etc.	*I had been taken*, etc.
cēperam, etc.	**captus eram**, etc.
Future Perfect.	
I shall have taken, etc.	*I shall have been taken*, etc.
cēperō, etc.	**captus erō**, etc.

Subjunctive.

Present.

capiam	**capiāmus**	**capiar**	**capiāmur**
capiās	**capiātis**	**capiāris** *or* **-re**	**capiāminī**
capiat	**capiant**	**capiātur**	**capiantur**

Imperfect.

caperem, etc.	**caperer**, etc.

Perfect.

cēperim, etc.	**captus sim**, etc.

Pluperfect.

cēpissem, etc.	**captus essem**, etc.

Imperative.

Present.

cape, *take (thou).*	**capere**, *be (thou) taken.*
capite, *take (ye).*	**capiminī**, *be (ye) taken.*

Future.

capitō, *thou shalt take.*	**capitor**, *thou shalt be taken.*
capitō, *he shall take.*	**capitor**, *he shall be taken.*
capitōte, *ye shall take.*	
capiuntō, *they shall take.*	**capiuntor**, *they shall be taken.*

	Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
	Infinitive.	
PRES.	**capere**, *to take.*	**capī**, *to be taken.*
PERF.	**cēpisse**, *to have taken.*	**captus esse**, *to have been taken.*
FUT.	**captūrus esse**, *to be about to take.*	**captum īrī**, *to be about to be taken.*
	Participles.	
PRES.	**capiēns, -ientis**, *taking.*	
FUT.	**captūrus, -a, -um**, *about to take.*	
PERF.		**captus, -a, -um**, *taken, having been taken.*
	Gerund.	*Gerundive.*
G.	**capiendī**, *of taking.*	**capiendus, -a, -um**, *to be taken.*
D.	**capiendō**, *for taking.*	
AC.	**capiendum**, *taking.*	
AB.	**capiendō**, *by taking.*	
	Supine.	
AC.	**captum**, *to take.*	
AB.	**captū**, *to take.*	

IRREGULAR VERBS.

405. Principal Parts: **Sum, esse, fuī.**

Indicative.

Present.		Imperfect.	
I am, etc.		*I was*, etc.	
sum	**sumus**	**eram**	**erāmus**
es	**estis**	**erās**	**erātis**
est	**sunt**	**erat**	**erant**

Future.		Perfect.	
I shall be, etc.		*I was, have been*, etc.	
erō	**erimus**	**fuī**	**fuimus**
eris	**eritis**	**fuistī**	**fuistis**
erit	**erunt**	**fuit**	**fuērunt** *or* **-ēre**

Pluperfect.		Future Perfect.	
I had been, etc.		*I shall have been*, etc.	
fueram	**fuerāmus**	**fuerō**	**fuerimus**
fuerās	**fuerātis**	**fueris**	**fueritis**
fuerat	**fuerant**	**fuerit**	**fuerint**

Subjunctive.

Present.		Imperfect.	
sim	**sīmus**	**essem**	**essēmus**
sīs	**sītis**	**essēs**	**essētis**
sit	**sint**	**esset**	**essent**

Perfect.		Pluperfect.	
fuerim	**fuerimus**	**fuissem**	**fuissēmus**
fueris	**fueritis**	**fuissēs**	**fuissētis**
fuerit	**fuerint**	**fuisset**	**fuissent**

Imperative.

Present.

es, *be thou.* **este**, *be ye.*

Future.

estō, *thou shalt be.* **estōte**, *you shall be.*
estō, *he shall be.* **suntō**, *they shall be.*

Infinitive.

Pres. **esse**, *to be.* Perf. **fuisse**, *to have been.*

Fut. **futūrus esse, fore,** *to be about to be.*

Participle.

Fut. **futūrus, -a, -um**, *about to be.*

Compounds of Sum.

406. Principal Parts: **Possum, posse, potuī**, *be able.*

Indicative.		*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	
possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
potest	possunt	possit	possint

Imperfect.	
poteram	poterāmus
poterās	poterātis
poterat	poterant

Imperfect.	
possem	possēmus
possēs	possētis
posset	possent

Future.
poterō

Perfect.
potuī

Perfect.
potuerim

Pluperfect.
potueram

Pluperfect.
potuissem

Future Perfect.
potuerō

Infinitive.

Pres. posse Perf. potuisse

Participle.

Pres. potēns, -entis

407. Principal Parts:

Prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *be profitable.*

Indicative. Present.	
prōsum	prōsumus
prōdes	prōdestis
prōdest	prōsunt

Subjunctive. Present.	
prōsim	prōsīmus
prōsīs	prōsītis
prōsit	prōsint

Imperfect.
prōderam

Imperfect.
prōdessem

Future.
prōderō

Perfect.	Perfect.
prōfuī	prōfuerim
Pluperfect.	**Pluperfect.**
prōfueram	prōfuissem

Future Perfect.
prōfuerō

Imperative.

Present.		Future.	
prōdes	prōdeste	prōdestō	prōdestōte

Infinitive.

Pres. prōdesse Perf. prōfuisse
Fut. prōfutūrus esse

Participle.

Fut. prōfutūrus, -a, -um

408. Principal Parts:

Volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish.*
Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling.*
Mālō, mālle, māluī, *be more willing, prefer.*

Indicative.

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imperf.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam

OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
FUT. PERF.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Subjunctive.

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPERF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

Imperative.

PRES.	——	nōlī	——
		nōlīte	
FUT.	——	nōlītō, *etc.*	——

Infinitivè.

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

Participle.

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	——

409. Principal Parts: **Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,** *bear, carry.*

	Active.		Passive.	
		Indicative.		
PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris *or* -re	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus eram	
FUT. PERF.	tulerō		lātus erō	
		Subjunctive.		
PRES.	feram		ferar	
IMPERF.	ferrem		ferrer	
PERF.	tulerim		lātus sim	
PLUP.	tulissem		lātus essem	
		Imperative.		
PRES.	fer[1]	ferte	ferre	feriminī
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor
		Infinitive.		
PRES.	ferre		ferrī	
PERF.	tulisse		lātus esse	
FUT.	lātūrus esse		lātum īrī	
		Participles.		
PRES.	ferēns		PERF. lātus	
FUT.	lātūrus			

[1] See **394**, note on imperative.

	Gerund.	*Gerundive.*
G.	ferendī	ferendus
D.	ferendō	
Ac.	ferendum	
Ab.	ferendō	

	Supine.
Ac.	lātum
Ab.	lātū

410. Principal Parts: **Eō, īre, iī** *or* **īvī, itum,** *go.*
Fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be made, become.*

Indicative.

Pres.	eō	īmus	fīō	fīmus
	īs	ītis	fīs	fītis
	it	eunt	fit	fiunt
Imperf.	ībam		fīēbam	
Fut.	ībō		fīam	
Perf.	iī (īvī)		factus sum	
Plup.	ieram		factus eram	
Fut. Perf.	ierō		factus erō	

Subjunctive.

Pres.	eam	fīam	
Imperf.	īrem	fierem	
Perf.	ierim (īverim)	factus sim	
Plup.	īssem (īvissem, iissem)	factus essem	

Imperative.

Pres.	ī	īte	fī	fīte
Fut.	ītō	ītōte	fītō	fītōtē
	ītō	euntō	fītō	fīuntō

Infinitive.

PRES.	īre	fierī
PERF.	īsse (īvisse, iisse)	factus esse
FUT.	itūrus esse	factum īrī

Participles.

PRES.	iēns, GEN. euntis	PERF. factus
FUT.	itūrus	

Gerund.[1]		*Gerundive.*
G. eundī	AC. eundum	faciendus
D. eundō	AB. eundō	

Supine.

AC. itum AB. itū

[1] The gerundive of eō occurs in the neuter, **eundum.**

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	= ablative.	*indef.*	= indefinite.
acc.	= accusative.	*interr.*	= interrogative.
adj.	= adjective.	*m.*	= masculine.
adv.	= adverb.	*n.*	= neuter.
c.	= common gender.	*pass.*	= passive.
cf.	= compare.	*part.*	= participle.
comp.	= comparative.	*perf.*	= perfect.
dat.	= dative.	*pl.*	= plural.
dem.	= demonstrative.	*pron.*	= pronoun.
dep.	= deponent.	*rel.*	= relative.
f.	= feminine.	*sing.*	= singular.
gen.	= genitive.	*subst.*	= substantive.
indecl.	= indeclinable.	*conj.*	= conjunction.

A.

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, by.

absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be absent, be away, be distant.

āc (atque), *conj.*, and.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, fall upon, happen.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, accuse, chide.

ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, sharp, active.

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, line of battle.

ācriter, *adv.*, sharply.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead to, induce.

adhibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, have present, call in.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be present, assist.

adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*, youth, young man.

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, arrival.

adversus, -a, -um, (*part. of* **advertō**), *adj.*, adverse, unfavorable.

Aeduī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aeduans, *a Gallic tribe.*

aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer.

ager, agrī, *m.*, field, country.

āgmen, -minis, *n.*, line of march.

agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, drive, do, act.

āla, **-ae**, *f.*, wing.
albus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, white.
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, belonging to another, unfavorable.
aliquis, **-quae** (**-qua**), **-quid**, (*and* **aliquī**, **-qua**, **-quod**), *indef. pron.*, somebody, something.
alius, **-a**, **-ud**, (*gen.* **alīus**, *dat.* **allī**), *adj.*, other, another; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another.
Allobrogēs, **-um**, *m.*, Allobroges, *a Gallic tribe.*
alter, **-era**, **-erum**, (*gen.* **alterius**, *dat.* **alterī**), *adj.*, one (*of two*), the other (*of two*).
altitūdō, **-inis**, *f.*, height, depth.
altus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, high, deep.
amīcitia, **-ae**, *f.*, friendship.
amīcus, **-ī**, *m.*, friend.
āmittō, **-mittere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum** (send away), let go, lose.
amō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, love.
angustiae, **-ārum**, *f. pl.*, narrows, narrowness.
animadvertō, **-vertere**, **-vertī**, **-versum**, attend to, notice.
animal, **-ālis**, *n.*, animal.
animus, **-ī**, *m.*, spirit, courage, mind.
annus, **-ī**, *m.*, year.
ante, *prep. with acc.; also adv.*, before.
antīquus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, ancient, old.
apertus, **-a**, **-um**, (*part. of* **aperiō**), *adj.*, open.
appellō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, call, name.
apud, *prep. with acc.*, near, among, with.
aqua, **-ae**, *f.*, water.
aquila, **-ae**, *f.*, eagle.
arbitror, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, think, believe, judge.
arbor, **arboris**, *f.*, tree.
Ariovistus, **-ī**, *m.*, Ariovistus, *a German chieftain.*
arma, **-ōrum**, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons.
ars, **artis**, *f.*, art.
Athēnae, **-ārum**, *f. pl.*, Athens.
atque (**ac**), *conj.*, and.
auctōritās, **-tātis**, *f.*, influence, authority.
audeō, **audēre**, **ausus sum**, (*semi-dep.*), dare.
audiō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītum**, hear.
autem, *conj.* (*postpositive*), but.
auxilium, **-ī**, *n.*, help, assistance, aid.

B.

barbarus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, barbarian.
Belgae, **-ārum**, *m. pl.*, Belgæ, *a division of the Gauls.*
Bellovacī, **-ōrum**, *m. pl.*, Bellovaci, *a Gallic tribe.*
bellum, **-ī**, *n.*, war.
Bibracte, **-is**, *n.*, Bibracte, *a town in Gaul.*
bonus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, good.
brevis, **-e**, *adj.*, short.
Britannia, **-ae**, *f.*, Britain.
Britannus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, British; *masc. used as noun*, Briton.
Brūtus, **-ī**, *m.*, Brutus, *a Roman name.*

C.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, fall.

caedēs, -is, *f.*, slaughter.

Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Cæsar.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, take, capture.

captīvus, -ī, *m.*, captive, prisoner.

caput, -itis, *n.*, head.

carmen, -minis, *n.*, song, poem.

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart, wagon.

Carthāgō, Carthāginis, *f.*, Carthage, *a city in Africa.*

cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear.

Casticus, -ī, *m.*, Casticus.

castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, camp.

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason; *abl. as prep. with gen.*, because of, on account of, for the sake of.

celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, quick, rapid.

celeritās, -tātis, *f.*, quickness, speed.

celeriter, *adv.*, quickly.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, conceal, hide.

centum, *indecl. numeral adj.*, hundred.

centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion, *commander of one hundred men.*

certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, certain, sure.

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero, *a Roman.*

circiter, *adv.*, about.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, put around, surround.

cīvis, -is, *c.*, citizen.

cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*, state.

clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shout.

clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, famous, renowned.

coepī, -isse, (*no present*), began.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think, ponder.

cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, recognize; *in perfect,* know.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, collect, compel, force.

cohors, -hortis, *f.*, cohort, *a tenth part of a legion.*

collis, -is, *m.*, hill.

colloquium, -ī, *n.*, parley, conference.

columba, -ae, *f.*, dove.

comes, -itis, *c.*, companion.

commeātus, -ūs, *m.*, supplies.

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, entrust; *with* **proelium,** engage in battle.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, change.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill.

concilium, -ī, *n.*, meeting, council.

cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātum, bring together, collect.

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish (do up), wear out.

cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, assert; *also,* strengthen, encourage.

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw together, hurl.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try, endeavor.

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, (sit together), take a position, encamp.

cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, plan, counsel, advice.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, *no supine,* (stand together), stand one's ground, halt.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, catch sight of, perceive, spy, see.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, arrange (*one's mind*), decide, draw up (*an army*).

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, accustom oneself, become accustomed.

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, consul, *head of the Roman republic.*

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, strive, hasten.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold together, restrain.

contrā, *prep. with acc.*, against.

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, come together, convene.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call together.

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, abundance, supply; *pl.*, forces *of soldiers.*

Corinthus, -ī, *f.*, Corinth, *a city in Greece.*

Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia, *a Roman name.*

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (*of an army*).

corōna, -ae, *f.*, crown, garland.

corpus, -oris, *n.*, body.

cottīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, daily.

cottīdiē, *adv.*, daily.

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, believe, trust.

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, blame.

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, together with.

cum, *conj.*, when, as, since, although.

cūr, *adv.*, why?

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take care, cause.

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, run.

cūstōs, -ōdis, *c.*, guard, keeper.

D.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, about, concerning, of (*in composition*, from, away, down).

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, owe, ought.

decem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten.

decimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tenth.

dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender.

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead away, withdraw.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, protect, defend.

dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tired.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, please, delight.

dēliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, consider, deliberate.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, pick from, choose.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, show, demonstrate.

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be away, fail.

dexter, -ra, -rum, *adj.*, right (*hand, etc.*).

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, say, tell.

diēs, diēī, *m.* (*sometimes f. in sing.*), day.
difficilis, -e, *adj.*, difficult.
dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy.
dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, diligence.
dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send away, dismiss.
dis-, *inseparable prefix*, apart; *cf.* **dīmittō, discēdō.**
discēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, withdraw.
discipulus, -ī, *m.*, pupil.
dissimilis, -e, *adj.*, unlike.
diū, *adv.*, long, a long time; *comp.* **diūtius**, *superl.* **diūtissimē.**
dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsum, separate, divide.
Divitiacus, -ī, *m.*, Divitiacus, *an Aeduan noble.*
dō, dare, dedī, datum, give.
doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, grieve, be pained.
dolor, -ōris, *m.*, grief, pain.
domina, -ae, *f.*, mistress.
dominus, -ī, *m.*, master.
domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home.
dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift.
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, doubt, hesitate.
dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful.
ducentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, two hundred.
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, lead.
Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Dumnorix, *an Aeduan, brother of Divitiacus.*
duŏ, -ae, -ŏ, *adj.*, two.
dux, ducis, *m.*, leader.

E.

ē (ex), *prep. with abl.*, out of, from.
ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out *or* away.
efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, bring *or* carry out, produce.
efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, effect.
egŏ, meī, *pers. pron.*, I.
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, go out, come out.
eō, īre, īvī *or* iī, itum, go.
eō, *adv.*, thither, to that place.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place.
epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter.
eques, equitis, *m.*, horseman; *pl.*, cavalry.
equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry.
equus, -ī, *m.*, horse.
et, *conj.*, and; **et . . . et**, both . . . and.
etiam, *conj.*, even, also.
ex (ē), *prep. with abl.*, out of, from.
exeō, -īre, -īvī *or* -iī, -itum, go out, go away.
exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.
exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think, judge.
explōrātor, -tōris, *m.*, scout.
expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take by storm.
exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wait for, expect.
exterus (*also* **exter**), **-a, -um**, *adj.*, outer, outside, external; — *comp.* **exterior**, outer; — *superl.* **extrēmus**, uttermost, last, farthest.

F.

fābula, -ae, *f.*, story, fable.
facile, *adv.* (*of* **facilis**), easily.
facilis, -e, *adj.*, easy.
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, do, make.
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, favor.
fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman.
ferē, *adv.*, almost.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, carry, bring.
fidēs, fideī, *f.*, faith, confidence, pledge.
fīdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, faithful.
fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.
fīlius, -ī, *m.*, son.
fīnis, -is, *m.*, end, border; *pl.*, territory.
fīnitimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, neighboring (bordering on); *masc. as noun*, neighbor.
fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, be done, happen, become.
fluctus, -ūs, *m.*, flood, waves.
flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river.
fortis, -e, *adj.*, brave.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune.
frāter, frātris, *m.*, brother.
frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain.
fruor, fruī, fruitus *aŭd* **frūctus sum,** enjoy.
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight.
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, flee.
fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, perform.

G.

Galba, -ae, *m.*, Galba, *a Roman name.*
Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, *a country nearly the same as modern France.*
Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Gallic.
Gallus, -ī, *m.*, Gaul, *an inhabitant of the country Gaul.*
Genāva, -ae, *f.*, Geneva, *a town in Switzerland.*
genus, -eris, *n.*, race, kind, sort.
Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, German; *masc. as noun*, a German.
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, carry on, do; **bellum gerere,** wage war.
gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword.
gracilis, -e, *adj.*, slender.
Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece.
Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek.
grātia, -ae, *f.*, favor, influence.
grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, grateful.
gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, severe.
graviter, *adv.*, heavily, deeply.

H.

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, have, hold.
Hannibal, -is, *m.*, Hannibal, *a famous Carthaginian general.*
Helvētius, -ī, *m.*, Helvetian, *of a Gallic tribe.*
hīberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, winter quarters.
hīc, haec, hōc, *dem. pron.*, this.
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, winter, pass the winter.
hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter.
Homērus, -ī, *m.*, Homer, *the Greek poet.*

homō, hominis, *m.*, man, human being.
hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, urge, exhort.
hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden.
hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy (*in war*).
hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.*, culture.
humilis, -e, *adj.*, lowly, humble.

I (vowel).

ibī, *adv.*, there.
īdem, eadem, idem, *dem. pron.*, the same.
idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable.
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.
ille, illa, illud, *dem. pron.*, that, that well known.
impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*, hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hinder, impede.
imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, general, commander-in-chief.
imperium, -ī, *n.*, command, rule, power.
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, command, order.
impetus, -ūs, *m.*, charge, attack, fury.
in, *prep. with acc. and abl.*; 1. *with acc.*, into, to, against; 2. *with abl.*, in, on.
in-, *negative prefix*, un (*as* **inimīcus = in + amīcus,** unfriend, enemy).
incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum, fall into, in with, *or* upon.
incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, urge on, arouse.
incola, -ae, *m.*, inhabitant.
incolō, -colere, -coluī, -cultum, inhabit, dwell in.
incrēdibilis, -e, *adj.*, incredible.
īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātum, bear into *or* against; **bellum īnferre,** wage offensive war.
īnferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, below, beneath; — *comp.* **īnferior,** lower, interior; — *superl.* **īnfimus** *or* **imus,** lowest (at the bottom of).
ingēns, -gentis, *adj.*, huge, vast.
inimīcus, -i, *m.*, enemy (*as a private person*).
initium, -ī, *n.*, beginning.
iniūria, -ae, *f.*, wrong.
inopia, -ae, *f.*, want.
īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up, form.
īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island.
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, understand.
inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among.
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill.
ipse, -a, -um, *intensive pron.*, my-, your-, him-, *etc.*, self.
is, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, that.
iste, ista, istud, *dem. pron.*, that (*of yours*).
ita, *adv.*, so, thus.
Ītalia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.
iter, itineris, *n.*, road, route, journey, march.

I (consonant).

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, throw, hurl.

iam, *adv.*, already, now.
iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssum, order, command.
iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*, judge.
Iūlia, -ae, *f.*, Julia, *a Roman name.*
iūnior, -ius, *adj.*, (*comp. of* **iuvenis**, young, *contracted for* **iuvenior**), younger.
Iūra, -ae, *m.*, the Jura mountains, *in Switzerland.*
iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, law.
iūs-iūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, *n.*, oath.
iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, just.
iuvenis, -e, *adj.*, young; *as a noun*, young man.
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, aid, help, assist.

L.

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Labienus, *one of Cæsar's lieutenants.*
labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, labor.
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, toil, labor.
laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, glad, gay.
lapis, lapidis, *m.*, stone.
lātitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, width, breadth.
lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wide, broad.
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, praise.
lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, lieutenant, envoy.
legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion, *a division of the Roman army.*
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, read (*also* gather).
lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.
libenter, *adv.*, gladly.
liber, -brī, *m.*, book.
līber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free.
līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl., of* **līber**, children.
līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, set free.
lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.
lītus, lītoris, *n.*, shore.
locus, -ī, *m.*, (*pl.* **loca**, *n.*), place.
longē, *adv.*, far.
longitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, length.
longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long.
lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light.

M.

magister, -trī, *m.*, master, teacher.
magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistracy, magistrate.
māgnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, size, magnitude.
māgnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, large, great.
mālō, mālle, māluī, *no supine*, wish more, prefer.
malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad.
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, remain, wait.
manipulus, -ī, *m.*, maniple, *a small company of soldiers.*
manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, *also* band.
Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus.
mare, maris, *n.*, sea.
Massilia, -ae, *f.*, Massilia, *the Latin name of Marseilles.*
māter, -tris, *f.*, mother.
mātūrē, *adv.*, early.
mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe.
medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle of.
memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory.
mēns, mentis, *f.*, mind.
mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month.
mercātor, -tōris, *m.*, merchant.
meus, -a, -um, *possess. pron.*, my, mine.
mīles, mīlitis, *m.*, soldier.
mīlitāris, -e, *adj.*, military.
mīlitia, -ae, *f.*, military service.
mille, *indecl. num. adj.*, thousand; *pl.*, **mīlia, -um,** *n., followed by gen.*, thousand.
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder at, admire.
miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched.
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, send.
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, warn, advise, admonish.
mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain.
mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom; *pl.*, manners.
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move.
mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.
multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, multitude.
multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much; *pl.*, many.
mūniō, -īre, -īvī *or* **-iī, -ītum,** fortify.
mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification.
mūnītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (*perf. pass. part. of* **mūniō**), fortified.
mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall.

N.

nam, *conj.*, for.
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tell, narrate.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, be born.
nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation.
nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature.
nātus, -ūs, *m.*, birth. *Used only in abl. sing.;* **māiōrēs nātū,** elders by birth, old men.
nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor.
nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat.
-ne, *enclitic interrog. particle, simply denoting a question; in indirect questions sometimes* whether.
nē, *negative particle*, that . . . not, lest, not to; **nē . . . quidem,** not even.
necēsse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary.
nēmō, -inis, *m.*, nobody, no one. *Not used in gen. and abl., the corresponding forms of* **nūllus** *being used instead.*
neque (nec), *conj.*, and not, nor; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor.
niger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, black.
nihil, *n., indecl.*, nothing.
nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless.
nōbilis, -e, *adj.*, noble, of high birth, famous.
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, harm, injure.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *no supine*, be unwilling.
nōmen, -minis, *n.*, name.
nōn, *adv.*, not.
nōnne, *interrog. adv.* (*introducing a question expecting the answer "yes"*), not?
noster, -tra, -trum, *possess. pron.*, our.
novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new.
nox, noctis, *f.*, night.

nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, no, not any, no one.
num, *interrog. particle (expecting the answer "no"), in indirect questions*, whether.
numerus, -ī, *m.*, number.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, report, announce.
nūntius, -i, *m.*, messenger.

O.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
obses, obsidis, *m.*, hostage.
obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, hold.
occāsus, -ūs, *m.*, setting; **sōlis occāsus,** sunset.
occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, kill.
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, seize, take.
octōgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, eighty.
omninō, *adv.*, altogether, in all.
omnis, -e, *adj.*, all.
oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town, walled town.
oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, attack, storm.
opus, operis, *n.*, work.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, oration.
ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, rank, order.
Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Orgetorix, *a Helvetian nobleman.*
ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, adorn, deck.

P.

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp.
pār, paris, *adj.*, equal.
parcō, -ere, pepercī (parsī), parsūrus (parcitūrus), spare.
parēns, -entis, *c.*, parent.
pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, pāritūrus, obey.
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare, furnish.
pars, partis, *f.*, part.
parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, little.
passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace; **mīlle passūs,** *a Roman* mile.
pater, patris, *m.*, father.
patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, native country.
paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, *used almost exclusively in the plural*, few.
pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.
pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money, wealth, (*originally* cattle; *cf.* **pecus**).
pecus, -oris, *n.*, flock, cattle.
pedes, peditis, *m.*, foot-soldier.
pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, on foot, of infantry.
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, repel, drive off.
per, *prep. with acc.*, through.
per-, *adv., in composition*, very (*as* **per-facilis,** very easy).
perīculum, -ī, *n.*, peril, danger.
perītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, skilful, experienced.
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, pursue.
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade.
pertineō, -ēre, -uī, *no supine*, hold through, extend.
perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, disturb greatly.
perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come through, arrive.

pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot, *as part of the body, and also as a measure.*

petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, seek, ask.

pictūra, -ae, *f.*, picture, painting.

pīlum, -ī, *n.*, javelin.

poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet.

polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum, promise.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place, put.

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge.

populus, -ī, *m.*, people, nation.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate, door.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry.

portus, -ūs, *m.*, port, harbor.

possum, posse, potuī, *no supine*, be able, can, have power.

post, *prep. with acc.*, after, behind; *also adv.*, afterwards.

posterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, next, following.

pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand.

potēns, potentis, *adj.*, powerful.

potestās, -tātis, *f.*, power.

potior, potīrī, potītus sum, get possession of.

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, carry before, prefer.

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, place before, put in command of.

praesidium, -ī, *n.*, guard, escort, protection.

praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, command, be at the head of.

prīmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, first.

prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*, chief.

prior, prius, *adj.*, earlier, former.

prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, for.

Procillus, -ī, *m., a Roman name. Gaius Valerius Procillus was sent by Cæsar as envoy to Ariovistus.*

proelium, -ī, *n.*, battle.

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, departure.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, set out, depart.

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, go (*or* come) forth *or* forward.

prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, hinder, keep from.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hurry.

propior, propius, *adj.*, (*comp. of stem of* **prope**, near), nearer; *superl.* **proximus, -a, -um,** nearest, next.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, be profitable.

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province.

proximus. *See* **propior.**

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, public.

puella, -ae, *f.*, girl.

puer, puerī, *m.*, boy.

pūgna, -ae, *f.*, fight, battle.

pūgnō, -āre, āvī, -ātum, fight.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beautiful, pretty.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think.

Q.

quadrāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty.

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, ask, inquire about.

quam, *adv.*, than, as.

LIBRARY OF THE

quantus, -a, -um, *adj., interrog.,* how great? how much? *rel.,* as great, as; **tantus . . . quantus,** so great . . . as.

quārtus, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral adj.,* fourth.

quattuor, *indecl. numeral adj.,* four.

-que, *enclitic conj.,* and, *to be translated before the word at the end of which it stands.*

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.,* who, which, what; *indef.,* any.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *indef. pron.,* a certain (*one, etc.*).

quidem, *conj. Often not to be translated, except by emphasizing the word before it; sometimes,* indeed, at least; **nē . . . quidem,** not even.

quīn, *conj.,* that, but that.

quīnque, *indecl. numeral adj.,* five.

quīntus, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral adj.,* fifth.

quis, quae, quid, *interrog. pron.,* who? which? what?

quis, quae (qua), quid, *indef. pron., used after* **sī, nisi, nē,** *and* **num,** any, any one, any thing.

quisquam, quidquam, *indef. pron., used only after negatives and negative expressions,* any one, anything.

quisque, quaeque, quidque, *indef. pron.,* each, each one, every.

quot, *indecl. pron., interrog.,* how many? *relative,* as many as.

R.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back; *also reflexive,* **sē recipere,** betake oneself, retire, withdraw, retreat.

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go back, return.

rēgīna, -ae, *f.,* queen.

regiō, -ōnis, *f.,* region.

rēgnum, -ī, *n.,* kingdom, royal power.

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, leave.

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.,* remaining, rest of.

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, remain, stay.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, report, announce.

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, find, find out.

rēs, reī, *f.,* thing.

resistō, -ere, restitī, *no supine,* resist, withstand.

respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsum, answer, reply.

rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.* (*really a noun,* **rēs,** *and adj.,* **pūblica,** the public thing), state.

retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, retain, hold back.

revertor, revertī, reversus sum *and* **revertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum,** *the deponent forms used in the present system,* return, go *or* come back.

rēx, rēgis, *m.,* king.

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.,* the Rhine, *dividing Gaul from Germany.*

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone, *a river of southern Gaul.*
rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank *of a river*, shore *of a lake.*
Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Roman; *masc. as subst.*, a Roman.
rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose.

S.

saepe, *adv.*, often.
salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety.
satis, *adv.*, enough.
scīō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know.
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, write.
scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield.
secundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, second, favorable; **rēs secundae,** prosperity.
sed, *conj.*, but.
semper, *adv.*, always.
senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate.
senex, senis, *m.*, old man.
Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to the Sequani, *a Gallic tribe; masc. as subst.*, a Sequanian; *pl.*, the Sequani.
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow.
serva, -ae, *f.*, female slave, maid-servant.
servus, -ī, *m.*, slave, servant.
sex, *indecl. numeral adj.*, six.
sexāgintā, *indecl. numeral adj.*, sixty.
sextus, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral adj.*, sixth.
sī, *conj.*, if.
sīgnum, -ī, *n.*, sign, standard, signal.
silva, -ae, *f.*, woods, forest.
similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left (*hand, etc.*).
socius, -ī, *m.*, ally.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun.
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed.
sōlus, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone.
soror, sorōris, *f.*, sister.
spēs, speī, *f.*, hope, expectation.
statim, *adv.*, immediately.
stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus, stand.
sub, *prep. usually with abl.*, under, at the foot of, close to; *used with the acc. after verbs of motion.*
suī, sibi, sē, *reflexive pron. of the third person; no nom.*, himself, herself, itself, him, her, it.
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be.
summus, -a, -um, *adj.*, highest, topmost, greatest, *often* at the top of *or* to the top of (*superl. of the root of* **superus**).
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, defeat.
supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be over, survive.
superus, -a, -um, *adj.*, upper, higher; *comp.*, **superior**; *superl.*, **summus.**
sūspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion.
sūspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, suspect.
sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, hold up (under), withstand.

suus, -a, -um, *possess. pron., third person,* his, her, its, their.

T.

tam, *adv.*, so, so greatly, so much.
tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, still, yet, notwithstanding.
tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great.
tēlum, -ī, *n.*, (missile) weapon.
tempestās, -tātis, *f.*, storm, tempest.
tempus, -oris, *n.*, time.
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, hold.
terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land.
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten.
tertius, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral adj.*, third.
timeō, -ēre, -uī, *no supine,* fear.
timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear, alarm.
Titus, -ī, *m.*, Titus, *a Roman name.*
tōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, whole, entire, all.
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give over, betray.
trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across.
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go across, cross.
trecentī, -ae, -a, *numeral adj.*, three hundred.
trēs, tria, *numeral adj.*, three.
tū, tuī, tibi, tē, *personal pron., second person,* thou, you; *pl.*, **vōs,** you.
turris, -is, *f.*, tower, turret.
tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, safe.
tuus, -a, -um, *poss. adj., second person,* thy, your.

U.

ubī, *adv., interrog. and rel.*, where (*sometimes* when).
undique, *adv.*, on *or* from all sides.
ūnus, -a, -um, (*gen.* **ūnīus**), *numeral adj.*, one, (*sometimes* the only one, alone).
urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.
ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, use; *also* need.
ut, *conj., with subj.*, that, in order that, so that; *also adv.*, as, when.
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, use, employ.
uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife.

V.

valeō, -ēre, valuī, valitūrus, be strong.
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay waste.
vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*, tax.
vēlōciter, *adv.*, swiftly.
vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift.
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come.
ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind.
vereor, -ērī, veritus, fear, be afraid of.
Vergilius, -ī, *m.*, Virgil, *a Roman.*
vērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, true.
vescor, -ī, eat.
vester, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.*, your.
vīcēsimus, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral*, twentieth.
victor, -ōris, *m.*, conqueror, victor.
vīcus, -ī, *m.*, village.
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see.

vigilia, **-ae**, *f.*, watch.
vīgintī, *numeral adj.*, twenty.
vincō, **-ere**, **vīcī**, **victum**, conquer.
vir, **virī**, *m.*, man.
virgō, **-inis**, *f.*, maiden, virgin.
virtūs, **-ūtis**, *f.*, virtue.
vīs, **vīs**, *f.*, force; *pl.*, **vīrēs**, **vīrium**, strength.
vītō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, avoid.
vīvō, **-ere**, **vīxī**, **vīctum**, live.
vocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, call.
volō, **velle**, **voluī**, wish, be willing.
voluntās, **-ātis**, *f.*, will, good will.
voluptās, **-ātis**, *f.*, pleasure.
vōs. *See* **tū**.
vōx, **vōcis**, *f.*, voice.
vulnerō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, wound.
vulnus, **-eris**, *n.*, wound.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

The figures 1, 2, 3, or 4 after a verb denote that the verb is regular and of the first, second, third, or fourth conjugation. Other abbreviations are the same as those used in the Latin-English vocabulary.

A.

able (be), possum, posse, potuī.
about, dē (*with abl.*), circum (*with acc.*), circiter (*adv.*).
absent (be), absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
accomplish, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
account (on account of), causā (*with gen.*), ob, propter (*with acc.*).
accuse, accūsō, 1.
accustom (oneself), cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum.
accustomed (be), soleō, -ēre, solitus sum (*semi-dep.*); cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum.
across, trāns (*with acc.*).
act, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
active, ācer, ācris, ācre.
admire, mīror, 1, *dep.*
adorn, ōrnō, 1.
advance, prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
advantage, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
adverse, adversus, -a, -um.
adversity, rēs (rērum, *etc.*) adversae.
advice, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
Aeduan (Haeduan), Aeduus, -ī, *m.*
against, contrā (*with acc.*), in (*with acc.*).
age, aetās, -ātis, *f.*; **in** *or* **by age**, nātū.
agreeable, grātus, -a, -um.
aid, auxilium, -ī, *n.*, iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum; prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus.
all, omnis, -e; **in all**, omnīnō (*adv.*).
Allobroges, Allobrogēs, -um, *m.*
almost, ferē.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um.
already, iam.
also, etiam.
although, cum.
altogether, omnīnō.
always, semper.
am. *See* **be.**

ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
among, inter (*with acc.*), apud (*with acc.*).
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um.
and, et, āc, atque, -que; **and not**, neque (nec).
animal, animal, -ālis, *n.*
announce, nūntiō, 1; renūntiō, 1.
another, alius, -a, -um; **belong to another**, aliēnus, -a, -um.
answer, respondeō, -ēre, -dī, respōnsum.
any (**body** *or* **thing**), aliquis, -qua *or* -quae, -quid, (*also* quis, qua *or* quae, quid).
approach, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
ardent, ācer, ācris, ācre.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
around, circum (*with acc.*); **put around**, circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum.
arouse, incitō, 1.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
art, ars, artis, *f.*; **art of war**, rēs mīlitāris.
as, quam, cum.
ascertain, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.
ask, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum; quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
assemble, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
assert, cōnfīrmō, 1.
assist, iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum.
astonished (**be astonished**), mīror, 1, *dep.*
at, in (*with abl.*).
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*, oppūgnō, 1; **make an attack**, impetum facere.
attend, adimadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
attention (**pay**). *See* **attend.**
away, ā (ab), *and*, *in composition*, dē; **lead away**, ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum; **go away**, abeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum; **send away**, dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum; **be away**, absum; -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.

B.

back, re- *in comp.*, *as:* **take back**, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; **go back**, redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum; **hold back**, retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
bad, malus, -a, -um.
baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*; pūgna, -ae, *f.*
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; **bear against**, īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum. *See*, *also*, **bring.**
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because of, ob, propter.
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

before, ante, *prep. with acc.*; ante, *adv.*; antequam, *conj.*
began, coepī, coepisse (*no present*).
beginning, initium, -ī, *n.*
behalf (in behalf of), prō (*with abl.*).
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, *m.*
believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum.
Bellovaci, Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m.*
between, inter (*with acc.*).
Bibracte, Bibracte, -is, *n.*
bind, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum.
birth, nātus, -ūs, *m.*; **of high birth**, nōbilis, -e.
black, niger, -gra, -grum.
blame, culpō, 1.
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
book, liber, -brī, *m.*
born (be), nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum.
bound, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
boy, puer, -ī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, portō, 1, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; **bring together**, cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātum; **bring out**, efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
Briton, Britannus, -ī, *m.*
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
but, sed, autem; **but that**, quīn.

C.

Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
call, vocō, 1, appellō, 1; **call together**, convocō, 1.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
can, possum, posse, potuī.
captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, capere, cēpī, captum. *See also* **take.**
care (take), cūrō, 1.
carry, portō, 1, (*see, also,* **bring** *and* **bear**); **carry before**, praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
Casticus, Casticus, -ī, *m.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*; cūrō, 1.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*; equitēs, -um, (*pl. of* eques), *m.*
cavalry-man, eques, -itis, *m.*
celebrated, clārus, -a, -um.
censure, culpō, 1.
centurion, centuriō, -onis, *m.*
certain, certus, -a, -um; **a certain** (*indefinite*), quīdam.
change, commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
character, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
check, prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitum.
cheerfully, libenter.
chief, prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*; **commander-in-chief**, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
children, līberī, -ōrum, *m.*
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
cohort, cohors, -tis, *f.*
collect, cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum.
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum;

come together, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; **come out**, ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
command, iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum; imperō, 1; praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus; **place in command**, praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
commander-in-chief, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
companion, comes, -itis, *c.*
conceal, cēlō, 1.
conference, colloquium, -ī, *n.*
confidence, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
confusion (throw into), perturbō, 1.
conquer, superō, 1; vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum.
conqueror, victor, -ōris, *m.*
consider, dēlīberō, 1.
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*
consult, dēlīberō, 1.
contend, contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*
council, concilium, -ī, *n.*
country, terra, -ae, *f.*; **native country**, patria, -ae, *f.*; **country**, *as distinguished from* **city**, rūs, rūris, *n.*
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
crown, corōna, -ae, *f.*
culture, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*

D.

daily, (*adv.*) cottīdiē, (*adj.*) cottīdiānus, -a, -um.
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, (*semi-dep.*).
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.*
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
decide, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
deck, ōrnō, 1.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
deeply (*i.e.* **seriously**), graviter.
defeat, superō, 1, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsum; **in defence of**, prō, *prep. with abl.*
deliberate, dēlīberō, 1.
delight, dēlectō, 1.
demand, pōstulō, 1.
demonstrate, dēmōnstrō, 1.
departure, profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*
depth, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*
desert, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.
determine, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
distant (most), extrēmus, -a, -um.
distant (be), absum, -esse, āfuī, āf tūrus.
disturb greatly, perturbō, 1.
divide, dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum.
Divitiacus, Divitiacus, -ī, *m.*
do, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum; agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
door, porta, -ae, *f.*
doubt, dubitō, 1; **there is no doubt**, nōn dubium est.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
dove, columba, -ae, *f.*

draw up, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
drive, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum; **drive back**, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*
dwell in, incolō, -ere, -coluī, -cultum.

E.

eager, ācer, ācris, ācre.
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.*
early, mātūrē, *adv.*
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
eat, vescor, -ī, *no perf.*
eighty, octōgintā.
eminent, clārus, -a, -um.
encamp, cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum.
encourage, animum (animōs) cōnfīrmō, 1.
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*
endeavor, cōnor, 1, *dep.*
endure, sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.*; inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
engage (in battle), committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, (proelium).
enjoy, fruor, fruī, fruitus *and* frūctus sum.
enough, satis.
entire, tōtus, -a, -um.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
equal, pār, paris.
escort, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
even, etiam; **not even**, nē . . . quidem.
every (one), quisque, quaeque, quidque.
exhort, hortor, 1, *dep.*
expect, exspectō, 1.
experienced, perītus, -a, -um.
extend, pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
extreme, māximus, -a, -um; extrēmus, -a, -um.

F.

fable, fābula, -ae, *f.*
fail, dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
faith, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
faithful, fīdus, -a, -um.
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum; **fall upon**, accidō, -ere, -cidī; **fall into, in with, upon**, incidō, -ere, -cidī.
famous, nōbilis, -e; clārus, -a, -um.
far, longē.
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
farther, longius, (*adv.*).
farthest, extrēmus, -a, -um.
father, pater, patris, *m.*
favor, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum.
favorable, secundus, -a, -um.
fear, timor, -ōris, *m.*; timeō, -ēre, -uī; vereor, -ērī, veritus sum.
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fight, pūgnō, 1.
fill, compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.
find out, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.
finish, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
fire, īgnis, -is, *m.*

first, prīmus, -a, -um.
five, quīnque.
flee, fugiō, fugere, fūgī.
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.* [sum.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus
following (*of time*), posterus, -a, -um.
fond of (**be**), amō, 1.
food, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, *m.*
for, prō (*with abl.*), *prep.;* nam, *conj.*
force, vīs, vīs, vī, vim; *pl.* vīrēs, vīrium, *f.*
forced (**march**), māximus, -a, -um.
forces (**military**), cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fortified, mūnītus, -a, -um, (*perf. part. of* mūniō).
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
forty, quadrāgintā.
four, quattuor.
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
free, līber, -era, -erum; **set free**, līberō, 1.
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, 2.
from, ā, ab, dē, ex, (*all with abl.*).
furthest. *See* **farthest.**
fury, impetus, -ūs, *m.*

G.

Galba, Galba, -ae, *m.*
Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um.
garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*
garland, corōna, -ae, *f.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
gather, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum; colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
Gaul (*the country*), Gallia, -ae, *f.;* (*an inhabitant of that country*), Gallus, -ī, *m.*
gay, laetus, -a, -um.
general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, *f.*
German, Germānus, -a, -um, (*as subst.*, Germānus, -ī, *m.*).
get possession of, potior, -īrī, -ītus sum.
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
give up, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
glad, laetus, -a, -um.
gladly, libenter.
go, eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum; **go out** *or* **away**, exeō; **go back**, redeō; **go across**, trānseō; **go away**, abeō; **go out**, ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum; **go forth**, prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
great, māgnus, -a, -um; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um; **how great**, quantus, -a, -um.
greater, māior, māius, *gen.* māiōris.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
Greek (*adj.*), Graecus, -a, -um; (*subst.*) Graecus, -ī, *m.*
grief, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
grieve, be grieved, doleō, 2.
guard, custōs, -ōdis, *c.;* praesidium, -ī, *n.*

H.

halt, cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī.
hand, manus, -ūs, *m.*
hand over, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, *m.*
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
harm, noceō, 2.
hasten, contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum; properō, 1.
have, habeō, 2.
head, caput, -itis, *n.*
hear, audiō, 4.
heavy, gravis, -e.
height, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*
help, auxilium, -ī, *n.*; iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum.
Helvetian, Helvētius, -ī, *m.*
her, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*); ēius (*gen. of* is, *not reflexive*).
herself, (*reflexive*), suī, sibi, sē, sē; (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
high, altus, -a, -um; superus, -a, -um, (*superl.* summus); **of high birth**, nōbilis, -e.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
himself, (*reflexive*), suī, sibi, sē, sē; (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
hinder, prohibeō, 2; impediō, 4.
his, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*); ēius (*gen. of* is, *not reflexive*).
hold, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum; **hold together**, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum; **hold back**, retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum; **hold (in possession)**, obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; **at home**, domī.
Homer, Homērus, -ī, *m.*
hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *c.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
how great, quantus, -a, -um.
how many, quot (*indecl.*).
huge, ingēns, -entis.
hundred, centum.
hurl, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum; conīciō, -iceré, -iēcī, -iectum.
hurry, properō, 1.

I.

I, egō, meī, mihi, mē, mē.
if, sī; **if not**, nisi.
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.
immediately, statim.
impede, impediō, 4.
in, in (*with abl.*).
incredible, incrēdibilis, -e.
induce, addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
infantry (*adj.*, = **of infantry**), pedester, -tris, -tre.
influence, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*; grātia, -ae, *f.*; addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
inform, certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī, -cultum.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.*
injure, noceō, 2.
inquire (about), quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.

intend, est in animō.
into, in (*with acc.*).
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, *f.*
its, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*); ēius (*gen. of* is, *not reflexive*).
itself (*reflexive*), suī, sibi, sē, sē; (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

J.

javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
judge, iūdex, -icis, *m.*
Julia, Iūlia, -ae, *f.*
Jura, Iūra, -ae, *m.*
just, iūstus, -a, -um.

K.

keep, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
keep from, prohibeō, 2.
kill, occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum; interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
kind, genus, -eris, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
knight, eques, -itis, *m.*
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.

L.

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*
labor, labor, -ōris, *m.*; labōrō, 1.
land, terra, -ae, *f.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, māgnus, -a, -um; multus, -a, -um.
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*; iūs, iūris, *n.*
lay waste, vāstō, 1.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; **lead away**, abdūcō, dēdūcō; **lead back**, redūcō; **lead out**, ēdūcō; **lead on**, indūcō, addūcō.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leave, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.
left (*i.e.* **left hand**, *etc.*), sinister, -tra, -trum; **left over** (**remaining**), rĕliquus, -a, -um.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
length, longitūdō, -inis, *f.*
lest, nē.
letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
like, similis, -e; *as verb*, amō, 1.
line (**of troops in motion**), āgmen, -inis, *n.* (**of battle**); aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
live (*i.e.* **live in**, **dwell**), incolō, -ere, -uī, -cultum; **live** (*i.e.* **be alive**), vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum.
long, longus, -a, -um; **a long time**, diū (*adv.*).
lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
love, amō, 1.
low, īnferus, -a, -um.

M.

made (**be**), fīō, fierī, factus sum.
magistracy, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
magnitude, māgnitūdō, -inis, *f.*
maiden, virgō, -inis, *f.*
make, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.
man, homō, -inis, *c.* (*a human being*); vir, -ī, *m.* (*an adult human male*).
maniple, manipulus, -ī, *m.*

manners, mōrēs, -um, *m.*, (*pl. of* mōs).
many, multī, -ae, -a, (*pl. of* multus).
march, iter, itineris, *n.*; **to march**, iter facere.
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
marsh, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*
Massilia, Massilia, -ae, *f.*
master (of servants, *etc.*), dominus, -ī, *m.*; **(of pupils**, *etc.*), magister, -trī, *m.*
meeting, concilium, -ī, *n.*
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
merchant, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
middle of, medius, -a, -um.
military, mīlitāris, -e; **military service**, mīlitia, -ae, *f.*; **military forces**, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*
mind, mēns, mentis, *f.*; animus, -ī, *m.*
mistress, domina, -ae, *f.*
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
much, multus, -a, -um.
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
my, meus, -a, -um.

N.

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
narrowness, angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
nation, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
native country, patria, -ae, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
necessary, necēsse, *indecl. adj.*
neighbor, fīnitimus, -ī, *m.*
neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um.
neither . . . nor, neque (nec) . . . neque (nec).
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
no, no one, nūllus, -a, -um.
noble, nōbilis, -e.
nobody, nēmō, -inis, *m.*, (*not used in gen. and abl.*).
not, nōn, nōnne (*in questions*), nē (*in prohibitions, wishes, and final clauses*); **and not**, neque (nec); **not even**, nē . . . quidem.
nothing, nihil, *n.*, (*indecl.*).
notice, animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
notwithstanding, tamen.
now, nunc, iam.
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O.

oath, iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, *n.*
obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.
of, dē (*with abl.*).
often, saepe.
old, antīquus, -a, -um; **old man**, senex, senis, *m.*; **older**, māior nātū.
one, ūnus, -a, -um; **one . . . another**, alius . . . alius; **one . . . the other (of two)**, alter . . . alter.
open, apertus, -a, -um.
oration, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

order, ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, (**rank**); imperium, -ī, *n.*, (**command**); **to order**, imperō, 1; iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum.
Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*
other, alius, -a, -ud; **other of two**, alter, -era, -erum.
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
over (be), praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
overcome, superō, 1.
owe, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

P.

pace, passus, -ūs, *m.*
pain, dolor, -ōris, *m.*; **be pained**, doleō, 2.
parent, parēns, parentis, *c.*
parley, colloquium, -ī, *n.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
perceive, cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum.
perform, fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum.
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum.
pick (from), dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
picture, pictūra, -ae, *f.*
pitch (a camp), pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
place, locus, -ī, *m.*, (*pl.*, loca, -ōrum, *n.*); pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum; **place over** *or* **in command**, praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum; **to that place**, eō.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
pleasant, grātus, -a, -um.
please, dēlectō, 1.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*
plenty, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
poem, carmen, -inis, *n.*
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
position, locus, -ī, *m.*; **take a position**, cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum; cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī.
possession (get), potior, -īrī, -ītus sum.
power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*, imperium, -ī, *n.*; **royal power**, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
powerful, potēns, -entis.
praise, laudō, 1.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī; praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
prepare, parō, 1.
present (be), adsum, -esse, affuī, affutūrus.
Procillus, Procillus, -ī, *m.*
procure, parō, 1.
profitable (be), prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, -futūrus.
promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum.
proper, idōneus, -a, -um.
prosperity, rēs (rērum, *etc.*) secundae.
protect, dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsum.
protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
public, pūblicus, -a, -um.
pupil, discipulus, -ī, *m.*
put around, circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum.

Q.

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*
quick, celer, celeris, celere.
quickly, celeriter.

R.

rank, ōrdō, -inis, *m.*
rapidity, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus; remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus.
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
remember, memoriā teneō, 2.
repell, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
reply, respondeō, -ēre, -dī, respōnsum.
report, nūntiō, 1; renūntiō, 1.
repulse, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
resist, resistō, -ere, -stitī, *no supine.*
rest, quiēs, -ētis, *f.*; **the rest of**, reliquus, -a, -um.
restrain, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
retain, retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
retire. *See* **retreat.**
retreat, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *with the refl. pronouns* mē, sē, *etc.*
return, revertor, -ī, reversus sum; redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*
right, iūs, iūris, *n.*; **right** (**hand**, *etc.*), dexter, -tra, -trum.
ripe, mātūrus, -a, -um.
river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
Roman, (*adj.*), Rōmānus, -a, -um; (*subst.*), Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*
route, iter, itineris, *n.*
row, ōrdō, -inis.
royal power, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
run, currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum.

S.

safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
seashore, lītus, -oris, *n.*
second, secundus, -a, -um.
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum; cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum.
seek, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum.
seize, occupō, 1; capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
select, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
self, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum; **send away**, dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
separate, dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum.
Sequanian, Sēquanus, -ī, *m.*
servant, servus, -ī, *m.*; serva, -ae, *f.*
set free, līberō, 1.

set out, proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum.
setting, occāsus, -ūs, *m.*
severe, ācer, ācris, ācre; gravis, -e.
sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.
sharply, ācriter.
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
shore, lītus, -oris, *n.*
short, brevis, -e.
shout, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
show, dēmōnstrō, 1.
sides (on all sides), undique (*adv.*).
sign, sīgnum, -ī, *n.*
similar, similis, -e.
since, cum.
sister, soror, -ōris, *f.*
six, sex.
sixth, sextus, -a, -um.
sixty, sexāgintā.
size, māgnitūdō, -inis, *f.*
skill, ars, artis, *f.*
skilful, perītus, -a, -um.
slaughter, caedēs, -is, *f.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*; serva, -ae, *f.*
slay, occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum; interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
slender, gracilis, -e.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
so (*of degree*), tam; **so . . . as**, tam . . . quam; **so** (*of manner or consequence*), ita; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um.
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*; **foot-soldier**, pedes, -itis, *m.*
somebody, aliquis, -qua *or* -quae, -quid; quisquam, quidquam.
something, aliquis, -qua *or* -quae, -quid; quisquam, quidquam.
son, fīlius, -ī, *m.*
song, carmen, -inis, *n.*
soul, animus, -ī, *m.*
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī (parsī), parsūrus (parcitūrus).
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
spend the winter, hiemō, 1.
spirit, animus, -ī, *m.* [tum.
spy, cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spec-
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, statum; **stand one's ground**, **take a stand**, cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī.
standard, sīgnum, -ī, *n.*
state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
still (*adv.*), tamen.
stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*
storm, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*; oppūgnō, 1; **take by storm**, expūgnō, 1.
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
strength, vīs, vīs, vī, vim; *pl.* vīrēs, vīrium, *f.*
strengthen, cōnfirmō, 1.
strive, contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum.
strong (be), valeō, 2.
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*
summon, convocō, 1.
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*; **sunset**, sōlis occāsus, -ūs, *m.*
superior (be), superō, 1.
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
surpass, superō, 1.
surrender, dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
surrender (*verb*), trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
surround, circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum.

suspicion, sūspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*
swamp, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*
swift, celer, celeris, celere; vēlōx, vēlōcis.
swiftly, vēlōciter.
swiftness, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

T.

table, mēnsa, -ae, *f.*
take, occupō, 1; capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; **take by storm**, expūgnō, 1; **take a position**, cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum; cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī; **take back**, recipiō.
take care, cūrō, 1.
tax, vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*
teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*
tell, nārrō, 1.
tempest, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
ten, decem (*indecl.*).
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m.*, (*pl. of* fīnis); ager, -grī, *m.*; terra, -ae, *f.*
than, quam.
that, ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id; **that (of yours)**, iste, ista, istud; **that, so that, in order that**, ut; **that not**, nē; **that, but that**, quīn.
their, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*), eōrum, eārum, (*gen. pl of* is, *not reflexive*).
there, ibī.
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
think, putō, 1; arbitror, 1, *dep.*; exīstimō, 1; cōgitō, 1.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
this, hīc, haec, hōc.
thither, eō.
thou, tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tū, tē.
thousand, mīlle; *pl.*, mīlia.
three, trēs, tria.
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
through, per (*with acc.*).
throw, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum; **throw together**, conīciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum; **throw into confusion**, perturbō, 1.
thy, tuus, -a, -um.
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.
Titus, Titus, -ī, *m.*
to, ad, in (*with acc.*).
together, con *in composition, as* **call together**, convocō, 1; **come together**, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; **throw together**, conīciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
toil, labor, -ōris, *m.*; labōrō, 1.
tongue, lingua, -ae, *f.*
top of, summus, -a, -um.
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
trust, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum.
try, cōnor, 1, *dep.*
turret, turris, -is, *f.*
twentieth, vīcēsimus, -a, -um.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duō, -ae, -ō.
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a.

U.

under, sub (*with abl. except after verbs of motion; then with acc.*).

understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
unfavorable, adversus, -a, -um; aliēnus, -a, -um.
unhappy, miser, -era, -erum.
unless, nisi.
unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
urge, hortor, 1, *dep.*
urge on, incitō, 1.
use, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.
utmost, māximus, -a, -um.

V.

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
vast, ingēns, -entis.
very, *to be expressed by the superl. or sometimes by* per- *in composition.*
victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*
village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*
violence, vīs, vīs, *f.*
violent, ācer, -cris, -cre.
violently, ācriter (*adv.*).
Virgil, Vergilius, -ī, *m.*
virgin, virgō, -inis, *f.*
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W.

wage war, bellum gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum; **wage offensive war**, bellum īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum.
wait for, exspectō, 1.
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*
want, inopia, -ae, *f.*
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
war-vessel, nāvis longa.
waste (lay waste), vāstō, 1.
watch, vigilia, -ae, *f.*
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
weary, dēfessus, -a, -um.
welcome, grātus, -a, -um.
welfare, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
what (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.
when, cum.
where, ubi.
whether, num.
which (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.
white, albus, -a, -um.
who (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.
whole, tōtus, -a, -um.
why? cūr.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
width, lātitūdō, -inis, *f.*
wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*
will, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*
willing (be), volō, velle, voluī.
wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*
wing, āla, -ae, *f.*; **wing of an army**, cornū, -ūs, *n.*
winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*; **winter quarters**, hīberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*; **pass the winter**, hiemō, 1.
wish, volō, velle, voluī; **wish more** *or* **rather**, mālō, mālle, māluī.
with, cum (*with abl.*), apud (*with acc.*).
withdraw (*transitive*), dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum; (*intrans.*), discēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum; recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum

(*reflexive with* mē, tē, sē, *etc.*).
withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*; fēmina, -ae, *f.*
wonder at, mīror, 1, *dep.*
woods, silva, -ae, *f.*
work, opus, operis, *n.*; labōrō, 1.
worthy, dīgnus, -a, -um.
wound, vulnus, -eris, *n.*; vulnerō, 1.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.
wrong, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

Y.

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
you, tū (*sing.*), vōs (*pl.*).
your, vester, -tra, -trum, (*belong-to more than one*); tuus, -a, -um, (*belonging to one*).
youth (young person), adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*; iuvenis, -is, *m.*

Announcement.

THE STUDENTS' SERIES OF LATIN CLASSICS.

UNDER THE EDITORIAL SUPERVISION OF

ERNEST MONDELL PEASE, A.M.,
Leland Stanford Junior University,
AND
HARRY THURSTON PECK, PH.D., L.H.D.,
Columbia College.

This Series will contain those portions of the Latin authors that are usually read in American schools and colleges; and to meet the growing demand for more liberal courses such other portions will be included as are well fitted for classroom use, but which have hitherto lacked suitable editions. In order to furnish permanent editions of uniform merit the work is distributed among a large number of special editors, and the several editions will be based for the most part upon approved German editions.

While thus profiting by the valuable results of German scholarship, which give the assurance of marked excellence to the Series, each editor will nevertheless verify all the statements of the original, and add to and alter them as much as may be necessary to adapt his work to the needs of American students.

The text will be carefully revised, and will be followed in a separate part of the book by a full commentary and index.

The Series will also contain elementary and supplementary works prepared by competent scholars. Every effort will be made to give the books a neat and attractive appearance.

14 DAY USE
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED
LOAN DEPT.
This book is due on the last date stamped below, or on the date to which renewed.
Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

26Jun'59FW

REC'D LD
JUN 13 1959

LD 21A–50m-9,'58
(6889s10)476B

General Library
University of California
Berkeley

YB 00204

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES

C045909279

Bull

7367 3

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY